https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-2020-486
Preprint. Discussion started: 9 February 2021

Biogeosciences Discussions

Reviews and syntheses: Physical and biogeochemical processes associated with upwelling in the Indian Ocean

Puthenveettil Narayana Menon Vinayachandran[1*], Yukio Masumoto[2], Mike Roberts[3], Jenny Hugget[4], Issufo Halo[5], Abhisek Chatterjee[6], Prakash Amol[7], Garuda V. M. Gupta[8], Arvind Singh[9], Arnab Mukherjee[10], Satya Prakash[6], Lynnath E. Beckley[11], Eric Jorden Raes[12], Raleigh Hood[13]

[1]Centre for Atmospheric and Oceanic Sciences, Indian Institute of Science, Bengaluru, 560012, India

[2] Graduate School of Science, University of Tokyo, Tokyo, Japan

[3] Nelson Mandela University, Port Elizabeth, South Africa

[4]Oceans and Coasts Research, Department of Environment, Forestry and Fisheries, Private Bag X4390, Cape Town 8000, South Africa

[5]Department of Conservation and Marine Sciences, Cape Peninsula University of Technology, PO Box 652, Cape Town 8000, South Africa

[6]Indian National Centre for Indian Ocean Services, Ministry of Earth Sciences, Hyderabad, India

[7]CSIR-National Institute of Oceanography, Regional Centre, Visakhapatnam, 530017, India

[8]Centre for Marine Living Resources and Ecology, Ministry of Earth Sciences, Kochi, India

[9]Physical Research Laboratory, Ahmedabad, 380009, India

[10] National Centre for Polar and Ocean Research, Ministry of Earth Sciences, Goa, India

[11] Environmental and Conservation Sciences, Murdoch University, Perth, Western Australia 6150, Australia

[12] CSIRO Oceans and Atmosphere, GPO Box 1538, Hobart, TAS, 7001 Australia

[13] University of Maryland Center for Environmental Science, Cambridge, MD, USA

Correspondence to: P. N. Vinayachandran (vinay@iisc.ac.in)

https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-2020-486
Preprint. Discussion started: 9 February 2021

Biogeosciences Discussions Open Access EGU

Abstract.

The Indian Ocean presents two distinct climate regimes. The North Indian Ocean is dominated by the monsoons, whereas the seasonal variation is less pronounced in the south. The prevailing wind pattern produces upwelling along different parts of the coast in both hemispheres during different times of the year. Additionally, dynamical processes and eddies either cause or enhance upwelling. This paper reviews the phenomena of upwelling along the coast of the Indian Ocean extending from the tip of South Africa to the southern tip of the west coast of Australia. Observed features, underlying mechanisms, and the impact of upwelling on the ecosystem are presented.

In the Agulhas Current region, cyclonic eddies associated with the Natal pulses drive slope upwelling and enhances chlorophyll concentration along the continental margin. The Durban break-away eddy spun-up by the Agulhas upwells cold nutrient-rich water. Besides, topographically induced upwelling occurs along the inshore edges of Agulhas Current. Wind-driven coastal upwelling occurs along the South coast of Africa and augments the dynamical upwelling in the Agulhas Current. Upwelling hotspots along Mozambique are present in the northern and southern sectors of the channel, and they are ascribed to dynamical effects of ocean circulation in addition to wind forcing. Interaction of mesoscale eddies with the western boundary, anticyclonic eddy pair interactions, and passage of cyclonic eddies cause upwelling. Upwelling along the southern coast of Madagascar is caused by Ekman wind-driven mechanism and by eddy generation and inhibited by Southwest Madagascar Coastal Current. The seasonal upwelling that occurs along the East African coast is primarily driven by the Northeast monsoon winds and enhanced by topographically induced shelf-breaking and shear instability between the East African Coastal Current and the island chains. Somali coast presents a strong case for the classical Ekman type of upwelling. This upwelling can be inhibited by the arrival of deeper thermocline signals generated in the offshore region by wind stress curl. The upwelling is nearly uniform along the coast of Arabia, it is caused by the alongshore component of the summer monsoon winds and modulated by the arrival of Rossby waves generated in the offshore region by cyclonic wind stress curl. Along the west coast of India, upwelling is driven by coastally trapped waves together with the alongshore component of the southwesterlies. Along the southern tip of India and Sri Lanka, the strong Ekman transport dives upwelling. Upwelling is feeble along the east coast of India and occurs during the summer, caused by alongshore winds. In addition, mesoscale eddies lead to upwelling but the arrival of river water plumes inhibits upwelling along this coast. Southeasterly winds drive upwelling along the coast of Sumatra and Java during summer. Kelvin wave propagation originating from the Equatorial Indian Ocean affects the magnitude and extent of Sumatra and Java upwelling. Both ENSO and IOD events cause large variability of upwelling here. Along the west coast of Australia, southerly winds can dominate over the Leeuwin Current, causing sporadic upwelling, which is prominent along the southwest, central, and Gascoyne coasts during summer. The open ocean upwelling in the southern tropical Indian Ocean and within the Sri Lanka Dome is driven primarily by the wind stress curl but also impacted by Rossby wave propagations.

https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-2020-486
Preprint. Discussion started: 9 February 2021

70 Upwelling is a key driver in enhancing biological productivity in all sectors of the coast, as indicated by enhanced sea
71 surface chlorophyll concentrations. Additional knowledge at varying levels has been gained through in situ observations
72 and model simulations. In the Mozambique channel, upwelling simulates new production, and circulation redistributes the
73 production generated by upwelling and mesoscale eddies leading to observations of higher ecosystem impact along the
74 edges of eddies. Similarly, along the southern Madagascar coast, biological connectivity is influenced by the transport of
75 phytoplankton from upwelling zones. Along the coast of Kenya, both productivity rates and zooplankton biomass are higher
76 during the upwelling season. Along the Somali coast, accumulation of upwelled nutrients in the northern part of the coast
77 leads to spatial inhomogeneity in productivity. On the other hand, productivity is more uniform along the coasts of Yemen
78 and Oman. Upwelling along the west coast of India has several biogeochemical implications, including oxygen depletion,
79 denitrification, and high production of CH4 and dimethyl sulfide. Though feeble, wind-driven upwelling leads to significant
80 enhancement of phytoplankton in the northwest Bay of Bengal during the summer monsoon. Along the Sumatra and Java
81 coasts, upwelling affects the phytoplankton composition and assemblages. Dissimilarities in copepod assemblages occur
82 during the upwelling periods along the west coast of Australia. Phytoplankton abundance characterizes inshore edges of the
83 slope during upwelling season, and upwelling eddies are associated with abundance in Krill.
84 The review identifies the northern coast of the Arabian Sea and eastern coasts of the Bay of Bengal as the least observed
85 sectors. Further, sustained long-term observations with high temporal and spatial resolutions along with high-resolution
86 modeling efforts are suggested for a proper description of upwelling, its variability, and its relationship to the ecosystem.
87

https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-2020-486
Preprint. Discussion started: 9 February 2021


Biogeosciences Discussions

1 Introduction

Tangential winds that blow parallel to the coast result in the transport of water away from the coast (Ekman, 1905). The water that is transported from near the coast must be replaced by water from below, usually from a depth range of 100 - 300m. This upward motion of water from below is termed as (coastal) upwelling (Sverdrup, 1937). While the dynamics of the system primarily concerns the upward flow, the change in properties of the water near the surface is what concerns most for the ecosystem and biogeochemistry. The water that upwells comes from below the Ekman layer, and therefore it is cooler, denser, and rich in nutrients. The transport away from the coast is governed by Ekman dynamics, and owing to the higher density of the upwelled water near the coast, a current that is parallel to the coast gets sets-up. The existence of a physical boundary, the coast, is a necessary condition for the upwelling to take place. The absence of Coriolis force at the equator and its change in sign across the equator creates a dynamical boundary at the equator that supports upwelling. Thus, easterlies drive poleward Ekman transport on both sides of the equator giving rise to equatorial upwelling. Upwelling is possible in the open ocean as well, even in the absence of a physical or dynamic boundary when the surface winds possess strong positive vorticity. Cyclonic wind stress curl leads to divergence within the surface layer leading to upward vertical velocity known as Ekman suction, which is often represented by a 'thermocline dome'. Other mechanisms, such as planetary waves can cause upwelling, and they will be described later in this paper. Upwelling has great significance in ocean science owing to its enormous potential to (1) cool the sea surface by several degrees and (2) increase the productivity of near-surface water by several orders of magnitudes, compared to regions unaffected by upwelling. California, Iberian, Canary, Humboldt, and Benguela are the well-known eastern boundary current upwelling systems in the world oceans. These classical eastern boundary upwelling systems are driven by winds blowing towards the equator.

The upwelling process connects the upper wind-driven part of the ocean with the relatively quiescent sub-surface regimes. Upwelling brings cold, nutrient-rich bottom waters to the surface layer, which significantly supports the primary production and hence the higher food web. This connection is vital for cycling tracers and nutrients and invigorating marine life across all states of the food chain. Water upwelled along the eastern boundaries of the major continents is known to harbor some of the world's largest marine ecosystems (Hutchings et al., 2009, Montecino and Lange, 2009, Checkley and Barth, 2009, Arístegui et al., 2009). Globally, the upwelling systems occupy less than 2% of the total oceanic area, but they alone contribute to ~20% of the total fish catch (Pauly and Christensen, 1995). Upwelling links the ocean interior with the surface where the ocean and atmosphere interact, exchanging heat, water, and gases, and serves as the source for major biogeochemical and ecological transformations. Though the impact of upwelling is most pronounced regionally, its impact could affect basin-scale circulation and regional climate.

The Indian Ocean is different from the Atlantic and Pacific due to its unique geographical setting marked by the northern land boundary located in the tropics itself. The vast landmass situated to the north of the ocean gives rise to the region's monsoon climate, which is characterized by seasonally reversing winds and copious rainfall during summer. The monsoon

https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-2020-486
Preprint. Discussion started: 9 February 2021

winds (**Figure 1**) are southwesterlies during May-September and Northeasterly during December-February. The transition from one Monsoon to the other occurs during the spring and autumn months of March - April and October - November, respectively (Schott and McCreary, 2001). Therefore, the most striking characteristic of the upwelling in the Indian Ocean, particularly concerning other typical Eastern boundary upwelling systems, is its seasonality.

A review of the coastal currents in the Indian Ocean was carried out by Shetye and Gouveia (1998). Schott and McCreary (2001) provide a comprehensive review of the monsoon circulation in the Indian Ocean, and an update of this review has been given in Schott et al. (2009). Shankar et al. (2002) has presented a detailed description of the monsoon currents and a synthesis of their dynamics. More recently, Hood et al. (2015) have reviewed the boundary currents in the Indian Ocean and their impact on biogeochemistry. The Indian Ocean science has witnessed a surge in activities in the last decade. Several multidisciplinary research programs that cut across institutional and national boundaries have been deployed towards developing new data sets and testing hitherto unknown hypotheses. Concurrently, numerical models have evolved into higher levels of sophistication, resolution, accuracy, and complexity. Motivated by the rapid progress that the Indian Ocean has witnessed in the last few years, this paper aims to synthesize the knowledge that has accumulated in recent times. Additionally, the review covers upwelling regions that have not received enough attention in past reviews. It is expected that the review would assist in developing future programs in the Indian Ocean coastal oceanography such as those outlined in the UN Decade of the Oceans.

The alignment of the coastline with respect to the winds offers favorable conditions for upwelling along several parts of the Indian Ocean boundaries. The southwesterlies are favourable for upwelling along the western boundary of the North Indian Ocean, particularly along the coast of Somalia and Oman. As they approach the west coast of India, the southwesterlies turn towards the equator and blow nearly parallel to the west coast of India, owing to the presence of the Sahyadri (Western Ghats) mountain ranges. The summer monsoon winds are also favorable for upwelling along the southern coast of Sri Lanka and along the east coast of India. Persistent wind stress curl in the Southern Tropical Indian Ocean (STIO) leads to a very shallow thermocline (Xie et al., 2002) and makes it one of the strongest upwelling open ocean upwelling regions. In the southern hemisphere, upwelling has been observed in the Agulhas Current region, Mozambique channel, in the region of the East African Current, and along the coast of Java and Australia. In the section that follows, upwelling along each of the above regions is described.

2. Coastal Upwelling Systems

In this section, each of the coastal upwelling systems in the Indian Ocean are described in detail. We first present an overview using historic portrayal followed by recent observations; these sections render characteristics of the upwelling and its impact on physical parameters. A review of the present status of modeling these upwelling systems is presented next, along with

https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-2020-486
Preprint. Discussion started: 9 February 2021

mechanisms that drive upwelling. The impact of upwelling on the marine ecosystem and biogeochemistry is discussed next, including those on the fisheries. Progress made during the IIOE-2 (2015 – 2010) era are paid particular attention, major outstanding issues are listed, and plausible approaches are suggested. While this general content remains the same for all regions, no effort has been made to wrap subject matter for each of the regions into the same packaging but follow the progress of science because the advancement of knowledge in each of these regions have progressed differently in terms of both the time when major progress was made and also in terms of focus on features that are specific to the region.

2.1 Agulhas Current

2.1.1. Characteristics and importance

The warm, fast-flowing Agulhas Current is the western-most outflow of the Indian Ocean. In the form of a 1000 km-long western boundary current along the southeastern side of the African continent, it transports an average of 84 Sv of upper IO water into the south Atlantic and Subtropical Convergence (STC; Lutjeharms, 2006; Beal et al., 2015). It is considered the largest of the WBCs. As such, the Agulhas Current plays a critical role in the planet's global circulation of thermocline water and the MOC (Rahmstorf, 2003; Donners and Drijfhout, 2004; Biastoch et al., 2008; Beal et al., 2011).

It's origin lie in the convergent flows from the Mozambique Channel, the East Madagascar Current, and the southern Indian Ocean subtropical gyre (**Figure 2**) carrying water masses from the Arabian Sea, Red Sea, and the equatorial Indian Ocean on the shoreward side, while offshore waters comprise Atlantic Ocean, Southern Ocean, and southeast Indian Ocean (Lutjeharms 2006; Beal et al., 2006). This convergence occurs in the vicinity of the Delagoa Bight in the southern part of Mozambique. With a volume transport that can reach 160 Sv, it is one of the most powerful WBCs. Typically, the narrow core (~200 km wide) has a velocity of ~2 ms^{-1} with maximums reaching 3.5 m s^{-1} (Lutjeharms, 2006; Beal et al., 2015). The core closely follows the African continent's steep slope once south of the Delagoa Bight at 27°S. The very narrow shelf (~3 km) here on the off northern KwaZulu-Natal (also known as Maputoland) means that the warm subtropical surface waters reach the coast and consequently extend the subtropical IO fauna and flora towards the poles (Turpie et al., 2000; Griffiths et al., 2010).

South of Cape St Lucia, the coastline retracts northwards away from the shelf edge for ~120 km forming the KZN Bight (**Figure 2**). Mid-bight, the Agulhas Current is ~40 km from the coast following the undeviating continental edge/slope. The small KZN Bight, which has a shelf edge depth of around 100 m and mid-shelf depth of 50 m, offers the only refuge from the strong Agulhas Current flow in the upper half of its trajectory.

Further downstream, more or less mid-length, the core again moves away from the coast as the continental shelf gradually widens at 27°E (near Port Alfred; see **Figure 2**) to become the Agulhas Bank — an area of great importance for spawning and the early life cycle of many of South Africa's commercially fisheries (Hutchings et al., 2002). The Agulhas Bank is the

https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-2020-486
Preprint. Discussion started: 9 February 2021


Biogeosciences Discussions Open Access EGU

most expansive shelf on the African continent and has a shelf edge at 200 m depth with typical mid-shelf depths around 120-150 m. The eastern part of the bank up to 22°E is commonly influenced by plumes of warm water from current meanders which extend northward (Lutjeharms, 1989; Krug et al., 2017). The Agulhas Bank has some of the most intense thermoclines found world-wide (Swart and Largier, 1987). At the Agulhas Bank's southern tip, the jet-like Agulhas Current becomes unstable and undergoes several fates (Lutjeharms, 2006). Ordinarily, the core retroflects south then eastwards, forming the Agulhas Return Current which flows along to the north of the Subtropical Convergence (STC) — a divide between the IO and colder Southern Ocean. A temporary northward displacement of the Return Current around the Agulhas Plateau (**Figure 2**) at times causes a fusion (occlusion) of the ARC with the Agulhas Current resulting in the formation of warm Agulhas Rings which propagate westwards into the south Atlantic Ocean — a critical contribution to the MOC (Biastoch et al., 2008; Beal et al., 2011). Occasionally the end of the Agulhas Current turns northwards and follows the steep slope of the Western Agulhas Bank.

Surface temperatures of the Agulhas Current range between 22 and 30°C in the northern reaches, reflecting seasonal oscillations but these decrease with southward latitude along the current's length in both seasons (Lutjeharms, 2006). Being of subtropical origins, the surface waters of the Agulhas Current are oligotrophic, but at depth, reflect nutrient concentrations of those typical of the SEC. As with all WBCs, isopycnals slope upwards across the current towards the shelf-slope moving nutrient-rich, cooler water to shallower depths (Lutjeharms et al., 2000; **Figure 3**).

Notwithstanding the current's planetary importance, it is also a major driver of local processes that underpin the shelf ecosystems along the east and southern shelf region of South Africa. This is underscored in the composite image shown in **Figure 4** where several important productivity features are highlighted by enhanced surface chlorophyll levels along the current's boundary. Some are bathymetrically fixed — others transient. All are underpinned by some form of upwelling of cooler, nutrient-rich water.

2.1.2. Transient meanders and cyclonic eddies (core upwelling)

A range of transient meanders and associated cyclonic eddies on the inshore boundary of the Agulhas Current commonly occur, promoting shelf-edge upwelling which does not usually break the surface. The most well-known is the Natal pulse which is observed on average 1.6 times a year, but this appearance ranges anywhere between 0 and 6 events a year (Lutjeharms and Roberts, 1988; de Ruijter et al., 1999; Bryden et al., 2005; Rouault and Penven, 2011; Beal et al., 2015; Leber and Beal, 2015). These large solitary meander events do not have a discernible seasonal cycle but, as pointed out, display considerable interannual variability (Krug & Tournadre, 2012). Natal pulses are of the order of 100 km in diameter and originate in the upper reaches of the current, usually due to the interaction of the core flow with adjacent anticyclonic eddies (Tsugawa and Hasumi, 2010). Natal pulses propagate down the east coast of South Africa at approximately 10-20 km/day and grow in size (amplitude) (upstream ~30 km, downstream ~200 km) (Lutjeharms et al., 2003), extending the full

https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-2020-486
Preprint. Discussion started: 9 February 2021


Biogeosciences Discussions Open Access EGU

depth of the Agulhas Current, i.e., ~2000 m (Lutjeharms et al., 2001, 2003; Elipot and Beal (2015); Pivan et al., 2016). The passage of a Natal pulse is often followed by the spawning of an Agulhas ring which moves off into the south Atlantic (Van Leeuwen et al., 2000; Lutjeharms 2006; Elipot and Beal, 2015).

Natal pulses drive slope upwelling with an order of magnitude of 50–100 m per day (Bryden et al., 2005; Pivan et al., 2016), and given their slow propagation, are associated with relatively long residence times. Their cold cyclonic cores temporarily move deeper water onto the narrow continental slope along the Transkei shelf and are coincident with enhanced surface chlorophyll (**Figure 5**). Their influence on the coastal waters is perhaps greatest between Port Alfred and Algoa Bay on the far eastern Agulhas Bank, where they facilitate cross-shelf exchange (Jackson et al., 2012: Krug et al., 2014; Pivan et al., 2016). Goschen et al. (2015) observed the dynamics of six Natal pulses here using in situ moorings, and found slope upwelling-induced cold bottom water events (10–12°C) to extend over the entire shelf reaching the inshore areas of Algoa Bay. These lasted last 1–3 weeks during the passing of the pulse, but the cold water on the shelf could linger a further three weeks. During upwelling, the isotherms ascended at an average rate of 1.8m day1 as the cold bottom layer increased in thickness to 40–60 m, although upwelled water did not break the surface in all cases. Cold water remained in the area for a further 2–3 weeks.

These results were recently contextualized by Malan et al. (2018) using a combination of two ocean models (INALT01 and AGU HYCOM). They showed that large meander events in the Agulhas Current drive strong shear with the shelf waters on the meander leading and trailing edges. This induces strong negative vorticity areas, which promotes upwelling events in the bottom boundary layer, resulting in a significant decrease in subsurface temperatures at 100 m at the shelf edge. This is particularly prevalent along the slope of the eastern Agulhas Bank. They used a tracer experiment to observe the uplift of water from 400 m beneath the surface of the Agulhas Current, on the leading edge of a large meander. **Figure 6** depicts the tracer results at the onset of the meander and follows the dynamics for four weeks. Important to note is the cold-nutrient-rich Central Water left on the shelf after the meander has moved west.

Another common recurring cold-core cyclonic eddy is the Durban break-away eddy first noted by Lutjeharms and Connell (1989) and more recently studied by Guastella and Roberts (2016). This is a semi-permanent feature of smaller proportions than the Natal pulse (~ 60 km). It is considered to be lee-trapped during its early development as a result of a submerged bight off Durban in the 100 m depth contour configuration. It is hypothesized that the cyclone is spun-up by the strong southwestward flowing Agulhas Current offshore of the regressed shelf edge near Durban. Analysis of ADCP data and satellite imagery shows the eddy to be present off Durban approximately 55% of the time with an average lifespan of 8.6 days. After spin-up, the eddy breaks loose from its lee position and propagates downstream on the inshore boundary of the Agulhas Current (**Figure 2**). The eddy is highly variable in occurrence, strength, and downstream propagation speeds. There is no detectable seasonal cycle in the eddy occurrence, with the Natal pulse causing more variability than any seasonal

https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-2020-486
Preprint. Discussion started: 9 February 2021

signal. Moorings and ship data confirm upward doming of the thermal structure in the eddy core associated with cooler water and nutrients being moved higher in the water column, stimulating primary production. Gaustella and Roberts (2016) also noted a second mechanism of upwelling by this feature, viz. divergent upwelling in the northern limb of the eddy (where the cyclonic radial flow separates from the shelf). Moreover, satellite-tracked surface drifters released in the eddy demonstrated the potential for nutrient-rich eddy water to be transported northwards along the inshore regions of the KwaZulu-Natal (KZN) Bight, thus contributing to the functioning of the bight ecosystem, as well as southwards along the KZN and Transkei coasts – both by the eddy migrating downstream and by eddy water being recirculated into the inshore boundary of the Agulhas Current itself.

2.1.3 Dynamic boundary upwelling

Another form of upwelling also occurs at two bathymetric points along the inshore boundary of the Agulhas Current. Historically referred to as dynamic or divergent upwelling, surface upwelling expressions (isotherm outcropping) occur west of Cape Lucia (near Richards Bay), where the very narrow Maputoland shelf (3 km) widens to become the KZN Bight, and near Port Alfred (27°E) further downstream where the Transkei shelf widens into the Agulhas Bank (**Figure 2**).

Both Lutjeharms et al. (2000) and Meyer et al. (2002) showed that low water temperatures of <19 °C, high salinities (c. 35.30), and nitrate levels (c. 15 µmol kg^{-1}) indicated upwelling in the northern KZN Bight with an epicenter between Cape St Lucia and Richards Bay. This is the prime source of upwelled water and nutrients for the KZN Bight. This upwelling is responsible for elevated chlorophyll levels commonly observed in the northern part of the Bight (c. 1.5 mg m^{-3}, cf. c. 0.5 mg m^{-3}. More recent work by Roberts and Nieuwenhuys (2016) showed upwelling events to last 5–10 days, with temperatures commonly dropping by 7°C. The earlier studies (Lutjeharms et al., 2000; Meyer et al., 2002) suggested this upwelling was topographically and dynamically driven by the juxtaposition of the Cape St Lucia offset and the Agulhas Current (a solitary mechanism). However, Roberts and Nieuwenhuys (2016) showed almost all major and minor cold-water intrusions on the shelf coincided with upwelling-favorable north-easterly winds that simultaneously force a southwesterly coastal current. Analysis of in situ mooring data indicates the strongest upwelling events here are driven by a coupled mechanism of Ekman bottom veering on the continental slope and upwelling-favorable wind.

Some 150 km south of Durban, the coastline again undergoes a small northward retraction from the shelf edge — which begins the slowly southward expanding Transkie shelf (at Port St Johns; see **Figure 2**). The shelf north of here is very narrow, as is the case north of the KZN Bight. South of Durban (and the Durban Eddy), the Agulhas Current flows close to the coast. But at Port St Johns, the Current begins to move offshore following the smooth continental slope. Roberts et al. (2010), using S–ADCP data and satellite SST demonstrated the existence of cyclonic flow in the Port St Johns–Waterfall Bluff coastal inset, with a northward coastal current similarly ranging in velocity between 20 and 60 cm s^{-1}. CTD data indicated that this was associated with shelf-edge upwelling, with surface temperatures 2–4 °C cooler than the adjacent core

https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-2020-486
Preprint. Discussion started: 9 February 2021

temperature (24–26 °C) of the Agulhas Current (**Figure 7**). Vertical profiles of the S–ADCP data showed that the countercurrent, about 7 km wide, extends down the slope to at least 600 m, where it appeared to link with the deep Agulhas Undercurrent at 800 m. It is not known how often this feature exists. Satellite images at times show enhanced surface chlorophyll on the narrow shelf here, but often this is overtaken by passing turbulent features on the inshore boundary of the current.

Surface upwelling near Port Alfred occurs on a much grander scale than the KZN Bight or Port St Johns, at times stretching from East London (29°E) to Port Elizabeth (80-300 km in length **Figure 4**), and is considered the most important upwelling on the southeast coast of South African. Lutjeharms et al. (2000), using cruise data, showed the upwelled water to originate from a depth of 200-300 m in the Agulhas Current resulting in the water of 8-11°C moving up onto the continental shelf, which has an edge break at 100 m depth. This colder, nutrient-rich water is derived from the upper to middle levels of South Indian Central Water and forms a thermocline, which at times breaks the surface here, resulting in extensive chlorophyll blooms that propagate westwards well onto the Eastern Agulhas Bank (e.g., **Figure 4**). Lutjeharms et al. (2000) suggested that topographically induced changes in the Agulhas current structure underpin the mechanism for this 'dynamic' upwelling. The intermittent outcropping of upwelled water occurs more than 40% of the time and dramatically changes the surface temperatures (Lutjeharms et al., 2000). Moreover, Lutjeharms (2006) suggested that the cold, nutrient-rich bottom layer on the eastern Agulhas Bank has its origins from upwelling in the Port Alfred region underpinning the intense thermoclines found here (Swart and Largier, 1987). However, Leber et al. (2017) found that meanders act in combination with upwelling-favorable winds to force the strongest cold events, while upwelling-favorable winds alone, possibly primed by Ekman veering, force weaker cold events. This is not unlike that found near Cape St Lucia. It is found that the frontal curvature of warm Agulhas Current meanders link with the atmosphere to drive local wind stress curl anomalies that reinforce upwelling. [see below]

2.1.4. Wind-driven coastal upwelling

Surface coastal upwelling is also found along the south coast of South Africa (i.e., eastern and central Agulhas Bank), some far removed from the Agulhas Current which is some 200 km away off Mossel Bay. This coastal upwelling is driven by the easterly winds that dominate during the austral summer months (Walker, 1986). It has been shown that the dynamic upwelling near Port Alfred is also augmented with easterly wind-driven coastal upwelling (Leber et al. 2016).

While the upwelling is found on the westward sides of prominent capes that reach deeper water, the epicenter occurs along the 100 km Tsitsikamma Coast (**Figure 4**), where the coastal bathymetry is steep (Roberts and van den Berg, 2005). A 100 km-long, thin offshore extension of this upwelling is commonly observed in satellite data during the summer months. This banana-shaped feature, known as the 'cold ridge', is associated with high levels of chlorophyll (**Figure 4**). Roberts (2005)

https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-2020-486
Preprint. Discussion started: 9 February 2021

suggested that the cold ridge is an upwelling filament drawn out by the shelf circulation; however, this hypothesis is still under investigation.

2.2 The Mozambique Channel

2.2.1 Historical perspectives

Oceanographic sampling within the Mozambique Channel was limited before the first International Indian Ocean Expedition (IIOE; 1959-1965), with merely six voyages and fewer than 100 stations recorded between 1913 and 1952 (Jorge da Silva et al., 1981). The Commandant Robert Giraud conducted extensive sampling throughout the Mozambique Channel during October and November 1957 as part of the International Geophysical Year (Menaché, 1963), but few of the 65 stations were located close to the coast. It seems likely that prior to the IIOE, coastal upwelling processes in this region were unknown, as the Somali upwelling system was the only upwelling area in the western Indian Ocean to be investigated during the expedition.

The first hydrographic data used to report on upwelling phenomena in the Mozambique Channel, as inferred from sloping isotherms and isohalines in the upper 500 m of the water column, were collected onboard RV *Dr. Fridtjof Nansen*, which surveyed the entire coast of Mozambique four times between August 1977 and June 1978 (IMR 1977a; IMR 1978a, b, c). Saetre and de Paula e Silva (1979) concluded that, during the NE monsoon (Nov-April), wind-induced upwelling occurs in a narrow strip of the ocean along the northern Mozambique coast between 11 and 16°S. Although they did not observe any associated low temperatures or high nutrient concentrations in the surface waters, they observed cyclonic eddies off Angoche in September and November 1977 and further south off Inhambane and along a transect off ~27°S during the September 1977 and January-March 1978 surveys. A special effort to investigate the upwelling in the northern section of the channel was subsequently undertaken onboard the RV *Alexander von Humboldt* in February and March 1980 to determine whether the upwelling was due mainly to wind or current effects (Nehring, 1984). Hydrographic sampling was conducted along nine transects normal to the coast between Cabo Delgado and Angoche. During this survey, dynamic topography revealed a cyclonic eddy in the Angoche region, with high NO3- and chlorophyll concentrations associated with the core of the eddy (Nehring, 1984; Nehring et al. 1987).

More detailed hydrographic surveys within the Delagoa Bight by the RV *Dr. Fridtjof Nansen* in October 1980 (Brinca et al., 1981) and RV *Ernst Haeckel* in January 1982 (Lutjeharms and Jorge da Silva, 1988) provided further information on upwelling and circulation in this southernmost part of the Mozambique coast. Lutjeharms and Jorge da Silva (1988) used data from all these cruises, in conjunction with satellite remote sensing SST imagery from AVHRR for the period spanning from 1975 to 1985, to study the region in detail. Their results suggested that there is an area in the Delagoa Bight, the Inharrime terrace, where upwelling enhances biological productivity over the continental shelf. A later study by Kyewalyanga et al. (2007) using satellite ocean color products and a biological model corroborated this finding. Lutjeharms

https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-2020-486
Preprint. Discussion started: 9 February 2021

and Jorge da Silva (1988) also suggested that a cyclonic lee eddy present in the Delagoa Bight during the 1980 and 1982 cruises was topographically driven and a relatively consistent feature. Between 2004 and 2006, a series of four cruises on the RV *Algoa* was undertaken to investigate the persistence of this lee eddy, as well as the influence of passing eddies on upwelling in the Bight, as part of the African Coelacanth Ecosystem Project (ACEP), with hydrographic and biological sampling conducted along a series of shore-normal transects within the Bight (Lamont et al., 2010). The lee eddy was documented only once during these cruises, leading Lamont et al. (2010) to suggest that the Delagoa Bight eddy is more transient than previously thought.

The RV *Dr. Fridtjof Nansen* returned to the region almost three decades later in 2007 for a comprehensive ecosystem survey of the entire Mozambique coast (Johnsen et al., 2007), and again in 2009 to survey the Angoche upwelling area during the Agulhas and Somali Large Marine Ecosystem (ASCLME) program (Olsen et al., 2009). These efforts complemented several hydrographic surveys within the Mozambique Channel between 2002 and 2010, driven largely by a French–South African partnership through the multidisciplinary MESOBIO (Influence of mesoscale dynamics on biological productivity at multiple trophic levels in the Mozambique Channel) research programme (Ternon et al., 2014), which focused on the mesoscale eddies. Detailed information about the Angoche and Delagoa Bight upwelling events, based on hydrographic data collected during MESOBIO, has been documented by Malauene et al. (2014), Roberts et al. (2014), and Lamont et al. (2014).

2.2.2. Mechanisms

The northern part of the Mozambique Channel is influenced by the monsoonal wind system, with wind stress predominantly from the north to north-east during austral summer and the south to southeast during austral winter (Saetre and Jorge da Silva, 1982; Schott et al., 2009). The influence of the monsoon winds in the Mozambique Channel is halted at about 20°S (Tomczak and Godfrey, 1994; Schott et al., 2009). South of this latitude, the winds are southeasterly (known as the trade winds) almost all year round and are unfavourable for Ekman upwelling along the Mozambican coast.

The monthly mean wind stress (vectors) and wind stress curl (shading) within the Mozambique Channel and around Madagascar are shown for different seasons in **Figure 8.** January (**Figure 8a**) represents typical austral summer conditions, corresponding to the boreal northeast Monsoon (NEM) regime. April (fall; **Figur 8b**) represents the period of the transition from the NEM towards the austral southeast Monsoon (SEM), shown for July, corresponding to the austral winter season (**Figure 8c**). October (**Figure 8d**) represents the reversal of the Monsoon from the SEM to the NEM. In the southern hemisphere, negative and positive wind stress curl correspond to Ekman suction and pumping, respectively. Ekman suction in general leads to the emergence of upward vertical velocities within the water column, resulting in upwelling (blue areas), whereas Ekman pumping leads downward vertical velocities, leading to downwelling events (red areas). The strongest upwelling is predicted around Madagascar, especially during July and October.

https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-2020-486
Preprint. Discussion started: 9 February 2021

With over 30 cruises in the Mozambique Channel since the late 1970s, there is now a clear picture of where upwelling hotspots are located along the Mozambique coast. In the northern sector, upwelling develops at Angoche, off the coast of Nampula between 15°S and 18°S, around the narrows of the Channel (**Figure 9**). Upwelling in the southern sector of the Mozambique Channel is more variable with regards to location, but several hotspot regions are evident, such as on the Sofala Bank, at Ponta Zavora, around Inhambane, and at the Delagoa Bight, directly offshore from the Mozambican capital Maputo. Upwelling within the Mozambique Channel, both in the northern and southern sectors, can be ascribed to two dynamic forcing mechanisms, one linked to the local characteristics of the oceanic circulation, and the other linked to the atmospheric wind forcing that transfers its momentum into the ocean's interior (Nehring et al., 1987; Quartly and Srokosz, 2004; Malauene et al., 2014; Roberts et al., 2014).

The drivers of upwelling at Angoche in the northern Mozambique Channel were recently investigated by Malauene et al. (2014), who inferred dominance of both wind-stress and oceanic mesoscale current instabilities. Data from an in situ underwater temperature recorder (UTR) deployed near Angoche between 2002 and 2007, combined with satellite data, revealed intermittent "cool water" events between August and March, which coincides with the period of the northeast monsoon winds. During this period, the alongshore winds in the northern Mozambique Channel are southward oriented and upwelling favorable; hence they induce surface divergence in the upper water column, thereby establishing the onset of wind-driven Ekman coastal upwelling (Malauene et al., 2014). This seasonal wind-driven coastal upwelling results in elevated chlorophyll-a signatures over an area between 15 and 18°S (Malauene et al., 2014).

The other contribution to upwelling at Angoche has been attributed to the dynamics of anticyclonic-cyclonic eddy pair interaction with the continental shelf (Malauene et al., 2014), due to the southward passage of large anticyclonic eddies and rings along the western boundary of the Channel (**Figure 9**; de Ruijter et al., 2002; Ridderinkhof and de Ruiter, 2003; Halo et al., 2014). The interaction of mesoscale eddies with the continental slope on the western side of the Mozambique Channel has been shown to cause upwelling of cooler, nutrient-rich water, resulting in elevated phytoplankton biomass in the shelf regions, as described further below (Lamont et al., 2014; Roberts et al., 2014). Malauene et al. (2014) suggested that the cool surface, elevated chlorophyll-a waters off Angoche are primed and formed by favourable wind-driven Ekman-type coastal upwelling during August and March, but may be further enhanced in chlorophyll-a by anticyclonic/cyclonic eddy pairs interacting with the shelf.

The interaction between mesoscale eddies and the Mozambican western boundary is intense and a frequent occurrence. This interaction also causes lateral divergence of the flow-field and has been regarded as an important driver of the observed upwelling events through slope current topographic-driven upwelling occurring predominantly at Ponta Zavora and Sofala Bank (Roberts et al., 2014; Lamont et al., 2014). Roberts et al. (2014) used in situ observations of ocean currents measured by a ship-borne Acoustic Doppler Current Profiler (S-ADCP) and hydrographic data from Conductivity Temperature Depth (CTD) casts to investigate the interaction of a dipole eddy (with the cyclone to the south of the anticyclone, tracked using

https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-2020-486
Preprint. Discussion started: 9 February 2021

altimetry maps of sea level anomalies) with the western continental slope of the southern Mozambique Channel, near Inhambane. They observed strong (>100 cm s^{-1}) southward currents over the slope adjacent to the anticyclone, with horizontal divergence over the shelf at the southern edge of the anticyclone, and intense slope upwelling between the dipole and the shelf. Nutrient and chlorophyll concentrations were enhanced in the near-surface waters over the shelf, although there was no evidence of upwelling at the surface. Data from a nearby UTR confirmed prolonged bouts of slope upwelling over several weeks until the dipole had moved further south. Combined altimetry and UTR data also slowed that both cyclonic and anticyclonic independent eddies (not part of a dipole) along the Mozambique continental shelf may induce slope upwelling, with divergence north of the contact zone in the case of cyclonic eddies (Roberts et al., 2014). Cyclonic eddies are usually associated with vertical pumping in the eddy's interior, favouring upwelling of nutrient-rich deep waters (i.e., new production) into the euphotic zone, particularly during the spin-up phase (Robinson, 1983; Tew-Kai and Marsac, 2009).

The southernmost upwelling region in the Mozambique Channel is the Delagoa Bight, centered around 26°S and 34°E (Lutjeharms and Da Silva, 1988; Lamont et al., 2010). The region is one of the largest coastal indentations in the southwest Indian Ocean, and the second richest area in terms of shrimp fisheries in the country, after the Sofala Bank. The oceanic circulation in the Bight is dominated by a semi-permanent cyclonic lee eddy (Lutjeharms and Da Silva, 1988; Cossa et al., 2016), which is topographically trapped and appears to occur about 25% of the time, with no clear seasonal signal (Cossa et al., 2016). The formation of the lee eddy in the Bight has been linked to the characteristics of the flow-field offshore, especially the Mozambique Channel rings. In particular, the passage of cyclonic eddies off the Inhambane region influences the water masses of the Delagoa Bight through upwelling onto the shelf, resulting in enhanced productivity (Quartly and Srokosz, 2004; Kyewalyanga et al., 2007; Lamont et al., 2010; Lamont et al., 2014). Kyewalyanga et al. (2007) recorded high chlorophyll a and primary production values in the northern part of the Delagoa Bight (**Figure 10**), where pelagic fish, mostly round herring (*Etrumeus teres*) have previously been recorded (Brinca et al., 1981).

2.2.3 Ecosystem impacts

In addition to stimulating primary production along the continental shelf of Mozambique, often in areas associated with higher biomass or pelagic fish or shrimps, the mesoscale eddies play an important role in ecosystem dynamics in the Mozambique Channel through the stimulation of new primary production via upwelling in cyclonic eddies, as well as the broad distribution of both coastal upwelling-generated and eddy-generated production. Using isotopic tracers, Kolasinski et al. (2012) showed that the new production is circulated throughout the mixed layer, while some cyclonic production may also be exported horizontally into the frontal region. Strong currents at the perimeters of these eddies result in the entrainment and offshore advection of this high biomass, dominated by siliceous diatoms, into the frontal regions (Kolasinski et al., 2012). Huggett (2014) found mesozooplankton populations were significantly enriched within the cyclonic eddies and divergence areas, with a higher abundance of copepod and euphausiid nauplii observed in the cyclonic eddies compared to

https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-2020-486
Preprint. Discussion started: 9 February 2021

the anticyclonic eddies. This suggests that the divergence areas are constantly "fed" by production from within the cyclonic eddies. This concentration of coastal production combined with the import of cyclonic production into the boundary region might explain why it is often the boundaries of eddies that are targeted by consumers in the Mozambique Channel. Sabarros et al. (2009) documented large aggregations of micronekton (small forage organisms including crustaceans, squid, and fish) mainly in areas where the local horizontal gradient of sea level anomalies is strong, i.e. at the periphery of eddies, and foraging frigatebirds tend to avoid the centre of cold-core (cyclonic) eddies, preferring the eddy edges (Weimerskirch et al., 2004). Mesoscale eddies are also thought to provide better conditions for tuna aggregations throughout the water column, not just at the surface, and high species diversity among longline catches (tunas and swordfish) in the MC suggests the eddies may function as biodiversity hotspots (Tew-Kai & Marsac, 2010). Through upwelling in the core of cyclonic eddies and offshore entrainment of shelf production in the inter-eddy frontal zones, mesoscale eddies are a major source and distributor of production and organic matter in an otherwise oligotrophic system, and a key driver in supporting the high biomass and diversity of pelagic consumers observed in this region.

2.3 Madagascar

2.3.1 Historical perspectives

The island of Madagascar received little attention both before and during the IIOE. The transect made by RV *Atlantis II* in 1963, departing from Maputo at the Delagoa Bight, simply crossed the southern Madagascar coast as a pathway to Reunion and Mauritius Islands (Miller and Risebrough, 1963). No wonder not even the name Madagascar is mentioned in their description (Wallen, 1964; Fye, 1965). If a potential upwelling zone off southern Madagascar upwelling had been known of then, surely a drive to investigate it during the IIOE would have been easily motivated.

Even since the IIOE, relatively few large-scale hydrographic surveys have been conducted along the coastline of Madagascar, which at ~48000 km is the longest in Africa. The first extensive oceanographic survey over the southern continental shelf of Madagascar to provide evidence of upwelling was conducted in June 1983 onboard the RV *Dr. Fridtjof Nansen* (IMR, 1983a; Lutjeharms 2006). In the south, inshore surface temperatures in the vicinity of Cap Sainte Marie, and Taolagnaro (Fort Dauphin) at the southeastern corner of the shelf, were about 2^{o}C lower than farther offshore, with salinities indicating upwelled Subtropical Surface Water originating from depths of about 200 m. Just over a quarter of a century later, the first "circumnavigation" of this large island was achieved through two "ecosystem surveys" in 2008 and 2009 by the RV *Dr. Fridtjof Nansen* during the ASCLME programme. Between 24 August and 1 October 2008, the *Nansen* completed 115 CTD stations in total along 11 transects extending far offshore along the south and east coasts of Madagascar, ending at the northern tip (Krakstad et al., 2008). Evidence was found of upwelled Subtropical Surface water at the southeastern corner of the shelf (25°S), while relatively fresher and cooler water inshore at 16°S and 14°S was suggestive of upwelling

https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-2020-486
Preprint. Discussion started: 9 February 2021

along the northeast coast (Krakstad et al., 2008). One year later, from 25 August to 3 October 2009, the Nansen revisited the western sector of the south coast and continued sampling along the southwestern and north-western coasts, ending once more at Antsiranana (Diego Suárez) in the north, completing 10 transects and 182 hydrographic stations (Alvheim et al. 2009). Once again, hydrographic sampling provided evidence of coastal upwelling on the southern coast (26°S), as well as at two locations on the west coast, near Cap Sainte André (16°S) and Nosy Be Island (13°S), with salinity maxima indicating upwelling of Subtropical Surface Water in the south and Equatorial Surface Water in the northern region (Pripp et al., 2014).

2.3.2 Mechanisms

Seasonal maps of wind stress curl indicate both strong upwelling and downwelling events around Madagascar are likely during austral winter (July, **Figure 8c**) through to late spring (October, **Figure 8d**). In July, the strongest upwelling is predicted to the northwest of Madagascar, around the Comoros basin. During this period, the winds are from the southeast. In October, the strongest upwelling is predicted all around the south, southeast, and southwest coasts of Madagascar. During this period, the winds have a northeast orientation along the southeastern coast, and a southeast orientation along the southwestern coast of the Island, thus becoming upwelling favourable.

Since the first observation of upwelling off southern Madagascar, there has been considerable interest amongst the scientific oceanographic community, both locally and internationally, to confirm this upwelling and understand the physical mechanisms of its formation, frequency, characteristics, and spatial extension and temporal variability (Lutjeharms and Machu, 2000; DiMarco et al., 2000; Machu et al., 2002; Ho et al., 2004; Srokosz and Quartly, 2013; Ramanantsoa et al., 2018; Collins, 2020). Lutjeharms and Machu (2000) used a snapshot composed satellite SST imagery from Advanced High-Resolution Radiometer (AVHRR) sensor onboard of NOAA satellite, with a spatial resolution of 1^{o}x1^{o} longitude and latitude, in conjunction with chlorophyll-a concentrations retrieved by SeaWiFS satellite, and Scatterometer wind field data from Quickscat satellite, to inspect the mechanisms of formation of this upwelling. Their finding suggested that this upwelling was caused by current instabilities at the inshore edge of the South East Madagascar Current, as no correlation was found with the local winds (Lutjeharms and Machu, 2000). In a parallel study using SST and wind field data from the same sources, DiMarco et al. (2000) concluded that upwelling over the southern continental shelf and along the southeastern continental slope, which extended over an area of 2^{o} longitude by 1^{o} latitude (nearly 24,642 km^2) during February and March (North-East Monsoon), was driven by both wind forcing and current interactions with the continental shelf and slope. However, the paucity of in situ wind and current data prevented them from quantifying the relative contribution of each process.

Machu and colleagues revisited the topic soon thereafter, and surveyed the southern and southeastern continental shelf of Madagascar on board the Dutch RV *Pelagia*, during the second phase of the Agulhas Current Source Experiment (ACSEX-2) project in March 2001. Hydrographic measurements conducted along three transects provided the first dedicated and

https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-2020-486
Preprint. Discussion started: 9 February 2021

515 comprehensive hydrographic evidence of the upwelling cell inshore of the EMC. The combination of this dataset and
516 satellite imagery led the authors to conclude that the southeastern Madagascar upwelling occurs through a combination of
517 favourable wind stress in the area, enabling an Ekman wind-driven mechanism, and the dynamics of a cyclonic eddy
518 generated inshore of the current, favoured by the concave-shaped bathymetry as the shelf widens (Machu et al., 2002).

519 An attempt to study the long-term inter-annual variability of the upwelling events to the south and southeastern Madagascar
520 and their interaction with the EMC was conducted by Ho et al. (2004). Their analysis of monthly SeaWiFs Chlorophyll-a
521 imagery spanning from September 1997 to November 2001 revealed that the upwelling was generally enhanced in austral
522 winter and austral summer each year. They also concluded that the southern and southeastern upwelling boundary cells
523 interact, based on the movement and deformation of the boundary between them, with a mechanism that can be explained
524 by the shear wave propagation theory (Ho et al., 2004).

525 More recently, Ramanantsoa et al. (2018a) investigated the temporal and spatial variability of the coastal upwelling south
526 of Madagascar. Using a suite of satellite remote sensing data, in-situ observations, and numerical model simulations, they
527 provide new insight on the structure, variability, and drivers of this upwelling. Their results suggest that the southern and
528 southeastern upwelling cells already indicated in former studies (Ho et al., 2004), which they termed core 2 and core 1
529 respectively, are characterized by distinct seasonal variability, have different intensities and water mass origins, and are
530 formed by different physical mechanisms (Ramanantsoa et al., 2018a). The core in the southeastern sector is attributed to
531 dynamical upwelling in response to the detachment of the EMC from the continental slope, reinforced by favorable winds.
532 The southern core, situated to the west of the southern tip of Madagascar (Cap Ste Marie), is primarily attributed to Ekman-
533 driven upwelling by favourable winds, whilst being inhibited by the recently described warm poleward current along the
534 eastern boundary of the Mozambique Channel, the Southwest Madagascar Coastal Current, or SMACC (Ramanantsoa et
535 al., 2018b).

536 During the *Nansen* survey in 2009, Pripp et al. (2014) observed upwelling off Cap Ste Andre and Nosy Be along the
537 northwest coast, with elevated sea surface salinities indicative of upwelled Equatorial Surface Water. They suggested this
538 upwelling was most likely current-driven due to strong northeastward bottom currents associated with passing anticyclonic
539 eddies, which would have resulted in onshore bottom Ekman transport.

540 **2.3.3. Productivity and ecosystem effects**

541 As with other upwelling regions, the upwelling areas on the Madagascar shelf are associated with elevated biological
542 productivity. During the 2009 survey, Pripp et al. (2014) found all upwelling cells to be associated with relatively high
543 surface chlorophyll and satellite-derived net primary production (NPP), as well as higher acoustic estimates of pelagic fish,
544 elevated pelagic and demersal trawl catches, and greater whale sightings. Ockhuis et al. (2017) found the highest neuston

https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-2020-486
Preprint. Discussion started: 9 February 2021

biovolume on the Madagascan shelf to be associated with relatively cool water (<22 °C) in the core upwelling areas, and Ramanantsoa et al. (2018a) describe the coastal upwelling area south of Madagascar as a hotspot of marine biological productivity. As has been observed for the Mozambique coast, the interaction of eddies with the continental shelf can lead to the export of this shelf-based, upwelling-derived production into the open ocean. A young cyclonic eddy that formed off southern Madagascar in 2013 was observed to entrain chlorophyll-rich shelf water around its perimeter (Barlow et al., 2017), with the associated entrapment of plankton having implications for the dispersal and recruitment of larval stages and biological connectivity between regions (Braby, 2014; Noyon et al., 2019).

The southeast core of current-driven upwelling has been proposed (Longhurst 2001; Lévy et al., 2007; Raj et al., 2010; Srokosz & Quartly, 2013) to be the main driver of the South-East Madagascar Bloom, an extensive phytoplankton/cyanobacteria bloom that has been shown by satellite imagery to occur to the southeast of Madagascar during late austral summer). However, analysis of a 19-year time series of ocean color satellite data by Dilmahamod et al. (2019) laid this as well as other theories to rest. Bloom occurrence was associated with La Niña conditions when upwelling intensity south of Madagascar was reduced due to a stronger than average Southeast Madagascar Current detaching from the coast. The resultant feeding of low-salinity water into the Madagascar Basin and enhanced stratification, along with ample light, are suggested as ideal conditions for a nitrogen-fixing cyanobacterial bloom onset (Dilmahamod et al., 2019).

2.4 East African Coastal Current system

2.4.1. Background

The equatorward-flowing East African Coastal Current (EACC) is present along the coasts of Tanzania and Kenya between 11°S and 3°S (**Figure 11**). Transporting about 19.9 Sv, as estimated by Swallow et al. (1991), the EACC draws much of its water from the westward-flowing South Equatorial Current. Even though it experiences the impact of the seasonally reversing winds, the northeast Monsoon in austral summer (NEM, November to March) and southeast monsoon in austral winter (SEM, April to October), the EACC is northward-oriented all year round, in contrast to the Somali Current located in its downstream bounds, which reverses its southward – northward orientation in synchrony with the reversal of the monsoons (Wyrtki, 1973; Schott, 1983; Tomczak and Godfrey, 1994). Downwelling is prevalent throughout the year, particularly during the SEM when the coastal current is strongest, but irregular upwelling has been observed near the northern Kenyan coast during the NEM when the EACC moves away from the coast in the region of the confluence with the southward-flowing Somali Current (Heip et al., 1995; Jacobs et al., 2020).

Although upwelling off the East African coast was first documented by Newell (1959), later confirmed by Iversen et al. (1984), Bakun et al. (1998), and Roberts et al. (2008), it is only recently that the importance of these coastal upwelling cells have been given deserved consideration through various regional research initiatives, such as the Productivity of the East

https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-2020-486
Preprint. Discussion started: 9 February 2021

575 African Coastal Current (PEACC) project, the Sustainable Oceans, Livelihoods and food Security Through Increased
576 Capacity in Ecosystem research in the Western Indian Ocean (SOLSTICE-WIO) programme (www.solstice-wio.org), and
577 the Western Indian Ocean Upwelling Research Initiative (WIOURI) flagship programme of the IIOE-2, due to their potential
578 to sustain food security to local coastal communities (Roberts, 2015). The dynamics of the overlying atmospheric wind
579 forcing (Varela et al., 2015) and the progression of the EACC through the chain of small scale islands (from south to north
580 - Mafia, Zanzibar and Pemba) along the coast of Tanzania (Roberts et al., 2008), combined with the varying local bottom
581 topography characterized by the presence of shallow banks along the coast of Kenya, have been identified as potential
582 drivers of upwelling events in the region (Roberts et al., 2008; Roberts 2015; Jacobs et al., 2020).

583 **2.4.2 Upwelling mechanisms**

584 The southern continental shelf off Kenya is very narrow (0-3 km wide), but in the northern sector the shelf widens to
585 approximately 45 km due to the presence of the North Kenya Banks (NKBs; Nguli 1995; Jacobs et al. 2020). Upwelling
586 events along the Kenyan coast are thought to be driven primarily by the northeast monsoonal winds that favor Ekman-driven
587 coastal upwelling and increased productivity during November -- April (Heip et al., 1995; Varela et al., 2015). However,
588 recent findings based on outputs from a high-resolution global biogeochemical model and satellite remote sensing
589 observations along the Kenyan coast suggest that, during the NEM, the Ekman wind-driven coastal upwelling is further
590 enhanced in the NKBs by a secondary dynamical process, topographically induced shelf-break upwelling, (Jacobs et al.,
591 2020). This shelf-break upwelling showed high levels of spatial and intensity variability at interannual timescales, related
592 to the confluence position between the EACC and the Somali Current (**Figure 12 a, b**). The model indicated that shelf-edge
593 upwelling and productivity were enhanced over the NKBs when the confluence was located further south.

594 Along the coast of Tanzania, both the North-East Monsoonal winds and shear instabilities between the EACC and the chain
595 of islands along the coast have been attributed as responsible physical mechanisms driving upwelling in the region, as
596 suggested by a modeling study by Halo et al. (in review). Roberts (2015) suggested elevated chlorophyll-a concentrations
597 in the lee (downstream) of Zanzibar Island, in particular, and to a lesser extent off Pemba Island, measured during a survey
598 in 2007, were a consequence of localized upwelling wake induced by an island wake (Roberts, 2015). A ROMS model
599 constructed by Zavala-Garay et al. (2015) also shows cool temperatures in the Zanzibar Channel during the NEM, potentially
600 caused by wind-induced upwelling north of Zanzibar Channel, followed by advection into the Zanzibar Channel. A small
601 but intense upwelling cell also develops around Tanga, between Pemba Island and the Tanzanian coast. This small upwelling
602 cell has been observed in both monsoons (**Figure 12**), suggesting it is a regular occurrence (Halo et al., in review).

603 **2.4.3 Productivity and ecosystem impacts**

https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-2020-486
Preprint. Discussion started: 9 February 2021

The modeling study by Jacobs et al. (2020) found that upwelling of cold, nutrient-rich water along the Kenyan coast during the NEM results in elevated chlorophyll, primary production, and phytoplankton biomass. This was particularly enhanced over the NKBs (**Figure 12 c, d**) and likely to contribute to higher fishery potential in this area, which has been traditionally low along the Kenyan coast. Interannual variability in wind strength during the NEM is likely to be an important factor controlling upwelling intensity and subsequent phytoplankton production in the region (Painter, 2020). However, a recent study by Varela et al. (2015) documented a long-term decline in coastal upwelling off Kenya during the NEM for 1982-2010, which suggests that upwelling-related productivity may decline in the long-term if this trend continues. In contrast, analysis of weather station data for the period 1977-2006 generally showed long-term increases in winds along the coast of Tanzania, although the trends in mean and maximum wind speed varied with latitude and season (Mahongo et al., 2012). Long-term trends were stronger during the SEM than during the NEM, with increased wind speeds for Tanga and Zanzibar in the north, but a decline in maximum wind speed for Mtwara in the south, and constant maximum wind speeds for Dar es Salaam. A coastal upwelling index (CUI) based on SST output from a coupled biophysical climatological model by Halo et al. (in review) showed a moderate and steady linear increase in upwelling for Tanga over a 23-year period (1990-2013), in line with the regional increase in wind speed observed by Mahongo et al. (2012).

The limited biogeochemical data for the EACC region were recently reviewed by Painter (2020), who noted that the warm surface waters are permanently N – limited, with low NO3-:PO43-, conditions that favor the nitrogen-fixing cyanobacterium. *Trichodesmium* colonies are generally more abundant during the NEM off both Kenya and Tanzania (Kromkamp et al., 1997; Lugomela et al., 2002), but this is unlikely to be related to upwelled nutrients, and more likely due to wind-borne aeolian dust and land-based nutrient input during the rains, as well as and the warmer, more stable conditions that prevail during the NEM compared to during the SEM. Sampling in Kenyan waters aboard RV *Tyro* in 1992, Kromkamp et al. (1995) measured higher rates of primary production during the NEM than during the SW monsoon, with maximum rates of 6 $gCm^{-2}d^{-1}$. Zooplankton biomass was also higher during the NEM, with maximum values of 18.6 mg C m^{-3} (Mwaluma, 1995).

2.5 Coast of Somalia

Coastal currents off Somalia exhibit a strong annual cycle forced primarily by the seasonally reversing monsoon winds. While during winter, alongshore currents are equatorward, during summer it is poleward and exhibits one of the strongest coastal upwelling of the north Indian Ocean. Until the early 1990s', the Somali upwelling regime was the most studied region of the Indian Ocean, and a comprehensive review of these studies was given in Shetye and Gouveia (1998), Schott

https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-2020-486
Preprint. Discussion started: 9 February 2021

and McCreary (2001), and Hood et al. (2015). Below the historical studies are highlighted briefly and focus primarily on the recent research on this upwelling region over the last few decades.

2.5.1 Background

In early May, as the Intertropical-Convergence-Zone move north of the equator, the northward East African Coastal Current crosses the equator and extends till about 3-4°N along the Somali coast and then recirculate to form a gyral circulation called the Southern Gyre (SG) (Duing et al., 1980). A portion of this SG meanders eastward and the rest flows southward to cross the equator offshore (Chatterjee et al., 2013). During this process, a cold upwelling wedge forms along its western and northern front. As the Monsoon progresses, currents north of the SG turn very complex. By June, the southwesterly monsoon winds (Findlater Jet; Findlater, 1969) strengthen along the coast resulting in a strong alongshore current all along the Somali coast extending up to a depth of 1000 m and the offshore Ekman transport induced by strong alongshore winds causes a strong upwelling off the coast of Somalia. By July/August, currents along the Somali coast strengthen rapidly to reach up to 250-300 cm/s with transport reaching up to 37 Sv (Fischer et al., 1996; Beal and Donohue, 2013) and thus forms the strongest boundary current of the north Indian Ocean. In the process, another gyre forms towards the offshore side of the northern part of the Somali coast between ~5-9°N, known as Great Whirl (GW) (Leetmaa et al., 1982). This time, a second cold-wedge forms along the northern flank of the GW north of ~9°N, where SST falls below 20°C. Interestingly, the early spin-up of GW can be traced to April, two months before the Findlater Jet initiation, and is linked to the annual Rossby waves radiated from the west coast of India (Shankar et al., 2002; Beal and Donohue, 2013). As the summer monsoon winds strengthen, the current along its northern front strengthens and transports up to 60 Sv during August. In some years, the Somali current continues to flow north through the Socotra passage and across the mouth of the Gulf of Aden (Beal and Chereskin, 2003). Occasionally the Somali current also flows offshore to the northeast of GW and forms a third anticyclonic eddy east of Socotra known as Socotra Gyre (Bruce, 1979; Fischer et al., 1996). During the late summer monsoon (August/September), SG weakens or even disappears in the south, but GW maintains its strength (Schott and McCreary, 2001; Chatterjee et al., 2019). Few observations and modeling study suggests that in late summer, SG migrate north to coalesce with the GW (Evans and Brown, 1981; Schott, 1983; Swallow and Fieux, 1982; Swallow et al., 1983; Luther and O'Brien, 1989), but the absence of such migration during WOCE 1995-96 observations (Schott et al., 1997) suggests that such events may be rare and therefore, does not reflect in climatological maps as well (Chatterjee et al., 2019). Finally, by late September, as the summer monsoon winds start to withdraw from the north Indian Ocean, the strength of the Somali

https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-2020-486
Preprint. Discussion started: 9 February 2021

659 Current and GW weakens. GW typically survives another month after the southwesterly winds wane off from the Somalia
660 coast.

661 The summer monsoon upwelling off the coast of Somalia also drives one of the most productive zones of the north Indian
662 Ocean. As the southwesterly alongshore winds strengthen, Ekman transport pushes the coastal surface water offshore,
663 leading to cold subsurface water to upwell and then advect away offshore by the strong SG and GW fronts. This upwelled
664 water brings a bounteous amount of nutrients to the euphotic zone (more than 15 μM), which result in enhanced
665 phytoplankton concentration in the upper surface layer (Smith and Codispoti, 1980; Hitchcock and Olson, 1992; McCreary
666 et al., 1996a, Wiggert et al., 2005).

667 **2.5.2 Observations**

668 This is one of the regions of the Indian Ocean where the number of observations has been sparse and mainly dates back to
669 the early campaigns of the north Indian Ocean in the 1960s' and 1970s' (Chatterjee et al., 2012). In the last couple of
670 decades, observing networks have grown tremendously over most parts of the Indian Ocean, but owing to the infestation by
671 pirates (McPhaden et al., 2009), the Somali region remains a data void region.

672 The first modern description of hydrography and circulation across the Somali coast was provided based on cruise based
673 observations between August-September of 1964 (Warren et al., 1966; Swallow and Bruce, 1966) under the first
674 International Indian Ocean Expedition (IIOE); a series of cross-shore hydrographic sections were carried out between 3°S-
675 12°N. They observed upwelled cold surface temperature (reaching up to 12.8°C) north of 7°N, and these cold waters spread
676 offshore as cold tongues along the northern flank of the GW reaching up to 55°E. Later, an extensive survey of the Somali
677 basin and the western Indian Ocean was carried out in the summer of 1979 using a multi-ship observation campaign known
678 as the Indian Ocean Experiment (INDEX) under the framework of the Indian Ocean Panel of SCOR. Based on samples
679 collected during INDEX, two separate zones of upwelling were identified: one in the south at ~3-4°N associated with SG
680 and the another in the northern part of the coast north at ~9°N linked to the fronts associated to GW with a minimum SST
681 of ~ 17°C (Leetmaa et al., 1982, Quadfasel and Schott, 1982) and surface NO3- concentration of ~15-20 μmole/liter (Smith
682 and Codispoti, 1980). This enhanced nutrients level increases productivity significantly to more than 300 g C m-2 yr-1
683 (Heileman and Scott, 2008). It was also observed that, in the middle part of the coast between ~5-8°N, the surface
684 concentration of the NO3- is relatively much lower, with maximum concentration reaching up to 1.8 μmole/liter even during
685 the peak monsoon (July/August) (Smith and Codispoti, 1980). Veldhuis et al. (1997) also reported strong upwelling with
686 surface temperature no more than 20°C and dominance of diatoms between 7-11°N along the Somali coast in July 1992. By
687 the late 90s' the availability of the remotely sensed satellite observations provided an opportunity to observe long term SST

https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-2020-486
Preprint. Discussion started: 9 February 2021

688 variability along this coast and is being used widely for understanding the seasonal variability and climatic trend of coastal
689 upwelling of this region (Goes et al., 2005; Wiggert et al., 2005; Prakash and Ramesh, 2007; Beal and Donohue, 2013).

690 Due to the large concentration of nutrients in the upper euphotic zone, the phytoplankton communities are mostly dominated
691 by large phytoplankton (diatoms) in the upwelled waters of the western Arabian Sea during the summer monsoon (Brown
692 et al., 1999; Shalapyonok et al., 2001; Wiggert et al., 2005). Despite the large abundance of nutrients in the upwelling
693 wedges off Somalia, the concentration of chlorophyll does not grow exponentially. Smith and Codispoti (1980) suggest that
694 the zooplankton grazing is the primary factor that limits the phytoplankton from growing exponentially. Few other studies
695 suggest that the swift Somali Current spreads these upwelled nutrients over a large part of the interior Arabian Sea and thus
696 enhances the productivity offshore (Keen et al., 1997; Hitchcock et al., 2000; Prasanna Kumar et al., 2001; Kawamiya,
697 2001). Later, based on in-situ measurements in the western Arabian Sea, Naqvi et al. (2010) suggested that dissolved iron
698 is one of the stressed micro-nutrient in this region and thus makes it an iron-limited High Nutrient Low Chlorophyll (HNLC)
699 zone during the summer monsoon.

700 **2.5.3 Modelling and Mechanisms**

701 Strong currents and double gyres off the Somali coast is one of the most studied phenomena in the 1970s to late 1990s. The
702 pioneering works by Lighthill (1969) and Cox (1979) were the first modeling study on the strong Somali currents during
703 the summer monsoon. Lighthill (1969) showed that as the westward propagating planetary waves excited by the offshore
704 negative wind stress curl reflect along the continental boundary off Somalia, they generate short-wavelength Rossby waves
705 that superpose to form the boundary currents. Thereafter, several papers studied the various aspects of this current system
706 and mainly focused on the dynamical mechanisms of the alongshore currents, the generation and decay of the two gyre
707 circulations off the Somalia coast, the impact of the slanted boundary in the propagation of these gyres (Anderson and
708 Moore, 1979; Cox, 1979; McCreary and Kundu; 1988; Luther and O'Brien, 1989; McCreary et al., 1993) and the impact of
709 internal instabilities (Wirth et al., 2002; Jochum and Murtugudde, 2005; Chatterjee et al., 2013). In a recent study using a
710 coupled ocean general circulation model, Chatterjee et al. (2019) showed that the upwelling of Somalia is limited to the
711 early phase of the summer monsoon when the low-level Findlater Jet sets in across the Arabian Sea (**Figure 13**). As the
712 Monsoon progresses, Ekman pumping induced by offshore negative wind stress curl deepens the thermocline in the interior
713 Arabian Sea. Subsequently, these downwelling signals propagate westward to interfere with the upwelling signals off
714 Somalia. As a response, the thermocline along the major part of the Somalia coast (~60%) deepens by about 40-60 m,
715 particularly in the central part of the Somali coast. Moreover, strong alongshore winds and weaker stratification allow more
716 mixing in the bottom of the mixed layer, which further deepens the thermocline and cools the surface mixed layer. As a

https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-2020-486
Preprint. Discussion started: 9 February 2021

result, during the peak summer months, upwelling becomes limited primarily to the eddy dominated frontal flows in the northern and to some extent in the southern part of the coast.

There are relatively much less modeling studies on the observed intense productivity in response to the upwelling. McCreary et al. (1996) demonstrated the first reasonable simulation of the annual variability of the surface chlorophyll bloom of the Arabian Sea based on a simple 2½ layer model coupled with an NPZD biological module. He showed that the phytoplankton blooms in the northern and central Arabian Sea during summer monsoon is primarily driven by the lateral advection of upwelled nutrients off the Somalia and Oman coasts and local entrainment. However, it was noted that the model underestimates the lateral advection as it does not resolve the mesoscale features like filaments that transport nutrients offshore in the real ocean. Later, Kawamiya (2001) studied extensively the role of this offshore advected nutrients from the coastal upwelling region in the open ocean of the Arabian Sea and concluded that Somali upwelling is the primary source of nutrient supply into the southcentral Arabian Sea and the Oman upwelling water supplies nutrient in the northern Arabian Sea. These coupled physical-biogeochemical models were also used to identify the most limiting factors that suppress the exponential growth of the phytoplankton in this region. McCreary et al. (1996) showed that nutrients and not the zooplankton grazing primarily limit phytoplankton growth in the upwelling region, as was suggested earlier (Smith and Codispoti, 1980). However, as they used a very simple 4 component NPZD model, it was not clear, which are the limiting nutrients that control the phytoplankton growth. On the other hand, studies with the help of more complex models, in the last couple of decades, suggest that phytoplankton growth in this region are prone to iron limitation (Wiggert et al., 2006; Wiggert and Murtugudde, 2007) and also likely to be silicate stressed (Kone′ et al., 2009; Resplandy et al., 2011). Recently, Lakshmi et al. (2020) studied various limiting factors and distribution of phytoplankton along the coast of Somalia using a high-resolution physical-biogeochemical coupled model. They showed that high values of chlorophyll concentration are limited to the northern flank of the GW north of 9°N and exhibit moderate or low concentration in the south. The strong boundary currents advect the upwelled nutrients from the southern region to the northern part of the coast and thereby accumulate the advected nutrients. In contrast, the deepening of the thermocline and horizontal advection keep chlorophyll concentration low to the south of 9°N. They further noted that dissolved iron concentration (~1.2-1.8 nM) and the NO3-:Fe ratio (<15000) do not indicate iron-deficient conditions throughout the coast but suggests NO3- limited growth of phytoplankton communities south of 9°N.

2.6 Upwelling off the coast of Arabia

Unlike the Somali coast, upwelling along Arabia (the coast of Yemen and Oman) is more uniform and exhibits classical upwelling dynamics primarily driven by southwesterly alongshore winds during the summer monsoon. In the 1990s' the repeated multiple alongshore/crosshore ship-based transacts under the US Joint Global Ocean Flux Study (US JGOFS), and the availability of the satellite observations of SLA, SST, and Chl-a led to a significant advancement in the understanding

https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-2020-486
Preprint. Discussion started: 9 February 2021

of the coastal current system and its associated upwelling dynamics of this region. A detailed review based on these observations is presented in Schott and McCreary (2001) and Hood et al. (2017). Here we briefly highlight some of these results and review recent advances in our understanding of this upwelling system.

The alongshore wind off the coast of Arabia is much weaker than that off the Somali coast but significant enough to cause coastal upwelling as early as May (Kindle et al., 2002), much before the development of southwest Monsoon. The upwelling strengthens as the magnitude of the alongshore winds become stronger with the progression of the summer monsoon. During the late summer (August/September), SST close to the coast decreases by about 5˚C from the ambient offshore temperature to fall below 23˚C (Shi et al., 2000). Owing to the offshore Ekman transport driven by the alongshore winds, sea level also drops by more than 30 cm along the coast. This is the time, owing to the crosshore sea level gradient, a northeastward coastal current, Oman Coastal Current (OCC; Shi et al., 2000) which persists throughout the summer monsoon (Cutler and Swallow, 1984). Interestingly, the maximum strength of the alongshore winds does not coincide with the minimum SST and sea level: while the alongshore wind reaches its peak in mid-June, the SST and sea level attain their minimum about one and a half month later by the end of August or early September (Manghnani et al., 1998; Vic et al., 2017). The reason for this delay is not very clear. However, Vic et al. (2017) indicated that remotely forced Rossby waves generated due to offshore Ekman pumping by the upwelling favorable wind stress curl (Smith and Bottero, 1977) north of the Findlater Jet (Findlater, 1969) axis drive this delay by modulating coastal stratification of the Arabian peninsula.

The strength of the OCC varies between 0.4-1.2 m/s during the SWM and attains its peak in the late summer (Lee et al., 2000). Direct current ADCP measurements suggest that OCC is not coherent all along the coast: its direction frequently changes in the south driven by eddy induced variability and predominantly southwestward in the north. As the mean current of the OCC strengthens in the north, its transport reaches ~10 Sv at the northeastern coast of Oman close to the Ras al Hadd (Lee et al., 2000). Subsequently, it turns offshore and meanders into the northern Arabian Sea to form the Ras al Hadd jet or front (Böhm et al., 1999). This front advects cold and fresh coastally upwelled water offshore and thereby creates a large SST gradient between the warm and saltier Gulf of Oman water and fresh and cooler Arabian Sea water and is visible clearly in the satellite images (Fischer et al., 2002). Moreover, protruding capes in the southern part of the Oman and Yemen coast generate topographically locked anticyclonic eddies close to the coast (Fagg and Kim, 1998; Lee et al., 2000). The non-linear interactions between these eddies and OCC create filaments and squirts extending far offshore from the coast (Manghnani et al., 1998; Wiggert et al., 2005). The width of these filaments is about 100 km with a current speed of ~0.5 m/s and transport ~2-6 Sv upwelled cold water offshore (Brink et al., 1998). This offshore transport by these filaments is found to be much more than the estimated wind-driven offshore Ekman transport, suggesting possible offshore deflection of alongshore mean currents which advect surface and upwelled subsurface water offshore. A part of this water then recirculates back to the coast by the returning flow of the offshore gyres.

https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-2020-486
Preprint. Discussion started: 9 February 2021


Biogeosciences Discussions Open Access EGU

783 The first estimate of the intensity of upwelling along this coast was given by Smith and Bottero (1977) using hydrographic
784 observations and winds observed during 1963 under the first IIOE campaign. They estimated a vertical velocity of the order
785 of 2×10^{-5} m/s with an upwelling transport of ~8 Sv through the 50 m depth along the 1000 km long coastline and from
786 the coast to 400 km offshore. Observations from the JGOFS cruises suggest that the upwelling signature on SST persists to
787 about 120 km offshore, whereas in the subsurface, upsloping of thermocline can be evident to about 260 km (Shi et al.,
788 2000). They find that, during the summer of 1995, the lowest SST recorded is 21oC close to the southern part of the Oman
789 coast in late August to early September, which upwelled from a depth approximately 100-150 m. However, note that the
790 coolest temperature is observed in the shelf of Oman, where SST starts to fall immediately with the onset of alongshore
791 winds and falls below 20˚C in early July. The gradual increase of temperature away from the coast indicates that the
792 upwelling predominantly happens near the coast than offshore, where positive wind stress curl favors open ocean upwelling.
793 McCreary et al. (1996a) further noted that in the open ocean, offshore of the coast of Oman, their model-simulated vertical
794 velocity at the bottom of the mixed layer remains very small despite a large upwelling favorable Ekman pumping velocity.
795 This negligible vertical velocity is attributed to the state of Sverdrup balance via the radiation of Rossby waves. Therefore,
796 they advocated that the open ocean cooling off Oman and the associated biological response is primarily driven by advection
797 of cold nutrient-rich upwelled water from Oman coast and the wind-driven mixing entrainment at the bottom of the mixed
798 layer, which deepens the thermocline offshore.
799
800 This intense upwelling all along the coast of Yemen and Oman in the western Arabian Sea also drives one of the strongest
801 primary productivity of this region at a rate of more than 2.5 $gCm^{-2}day^{-1}$ (Marra et al., 1998; Morrison et al., 1998). Unlike,
802 Somali coast, here chlorophyll concentration is found to be more uniform and extend up to 400 km offshore. The offshore
803 open ocean chlorophyll bloom is attributed to the advection of nutrient-rich upwelled water offshore by the several filaments
804 along the coast of Oman and wind-driven entrainment (McCreary et al., 1996; Wiggert et al., 2005). A detailed discussion
805 on biophysical interactions along this coast is discussed in Section 2.7.5.
806
807 A major part of our understanding about the coastal upwelling off Oman is based on observations and modeling studies
808 carried out in 90s' and early 2000. Unfortunately, lack of observation and concerted modeling effort resulted in sluggish
809 progress of our understanding in the last couple of decades for this region. The dynamical reasons for the development of
810 offshore eddies and their impact on the coastal upwelling, coastal currents, SST, air-sea interactions, and finally, over the
811 biology is still not clear. Thus, considering the importance of this region in regional physical and ecological processes and,
812 most importantly its influence on the Indian Monsoon, a much focused effort is needed from the scientific community for a
813 complete understanding of oceanic processes of this coastal upwelling system.
814
815
816 **2.7 Upwelling along the West Coast of India**

https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-2020-486
Preprint. Discussion started: 9 February 2021

817 The signatures of upwelling along the west coast of India begin to appear during March, peak during June, and weaken by
818 September. Though several studies have shown that upwelling could start between February and May, the surfacing of cold,
819 nutrient-rich water is more prominent during June-July. Moreover, the upwelling is more intense along the southwest coast
820 of India than that along the northwest coast. For the remaining months, the sea level anomaly is positive, and the thermocline
821 is deeper, indicating conditions unfavorable for upwelling. A major consequence of west coast upwelling is the formation
822 of anoxia that has a significant impact on the benthic ecosystem on the continental shelf (Banse 1959, Naqvi, 1991).
823 Although the upwelling along the west coast of India is weaker than that along the coast of Somalia, the region accounts for
824 70% of the Arabian Sea fish production (Luis and Kawamura 2004).

825 **2.7.1 Historical Background**

826 The earliest temperature observations along the west coast were collected by trading vessels and were confined to major
827 shipping routes. These observations were compiled into several atlases generated by different countries (Anonymous 1945,
828 1948, 1952). Though there were inconsistencies among the atlases, they showed the presence of cold water off the southwest
829 coast of India from June to October (Banse, 1959). The decrease in temperature during the summer monsoon was also
830 evident in sea surface temperature (SST) data shown by Sewell (1929) along the southwest coast of India and Lakshadweep.
831 However, it was difficult to attribute this decrease in temperature to upwelling as the SST could also be controlled by other
832 factors like atmospheric fluxes, horizontal advection, or mixing. He showed that SST increased during April-May when the
833 boreal summer is at its peak and dropped during June-July when the Monsoon picks up. After the Monsoon, the second
834 oscillation started: the temperature picked up again and dropped during the boreal winter when the winds were cooler.
835 Naturally, using available observations, Sewell (1929) linked the double oscillation of SST to air temperature change.

836 The first evidence for upwelling along the west coast of India was presented by Sastry and Myrland (1959); they showed
837 that the isotherms tilted upwards all along the southwest coast of India. Both Sastry and Myrland (1959) and Banse (1959)
838 argued that the upwelling along the southwest coast of India is not completely driven by monsoon winds because the fall in
839 SST occurred in April-May, which is a month before the onset of the summer monsoon. They hypothesized that the
840 prevailing current-system caused the upward tilting of isotherms. The reversal in the West India Coastal Current (WICC)
841 appeared to coincide with the beginning of upwelling at the southern tip of India. Banse (1959) suggested that after the onset
842 of Monsoon, the winds could intermittently push the cold water to the surface. Banse (1959) further noted that the poorly
843 aerated bottom water on the shelf during the summer monsoon was linked to upwelling that takes place along the coast.

844 Hydrographic sections in the decades that followed showed that the upwelling signatures extended all along the west coast
845 of India and Pakistan (Banse 1968; Sarma, 1968; Ramamirtham and Rao, 1973) and revealed that upwelling sets in earlier
846 in the south and progresses slowly towards the north (Sharma, 1968, Longhurst and Wooster, 1990). Due to the boisterous
847 nature of monsoon winds, upwelling along the west coast of India was still considered to be driven by alongshore winds

https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-2020-486
Preprint. Discussion started: 9 February 2021

(Ramamirtham and Rao, 1973). The role of wind in driving the upwelling was disputed again by Sharma (1978), using the available wind data from the atlases that showed that the wind was onshore and poleward and not favorable for upwelling during the summer monsoon. Notwithstanding, recent wind data sets show that the alongshore winds are not poleward but equatorward (but weak) during the summer monsoon.

Johannessen et al. (1981) used an extensive data set (consisting of 1500 Nansen casts collected from 1971-1975) and confirmed the upwelling features highlighted in previous studies. The seasonal upwelling was found to repeat every year, albeit with a certain amount of variability. Upwelling signatures were not evident in salinity but in temperature and oxygen data. The upwelling process also increased phytoplankton and zooplankton production. However, no such correlation was evident for the higher trophic level of the food chain. The calculated rate of upwelling was around 1.5 m/day, which was consistent with the earlier observations.

The "wind-driven upwelling" hypothesis was again invoked in the mid-eighties. Shetye et al. (1985) used a more recent wind product (Hasternath and Lamb, 1978) and found that offshore Ekman transport, though weak, peaked during the summer monsoon. Using ship-based observations, Shetye et al. (1990) confirmed that the upwelling intensity weakened from south to north. The width of the surface current, which is related to the upwelling, extended about 150 km from the coast. The signatures of upwelling were evident only in the top 100 m below which there were signatures of downwelling, indicative of an undercurrent. They refuted the "current-induced upwelling" hypothesis using regression analysis between Ekman transport and temperature gradient.

In the nineties, numerical models were used to provide insight into the seasonal cycle of north Indian Ocean circulation (McCreary 1993; Shankar et al., 1996; McCreary et al., 1996; Vinayachandran et al., 1996; Shankar and Shetye 1997). Using linear wave theory, McCreary et al. (1993) proposed that the upwelling along the west coast of India was primarily driven by coastal-trapped waves generated by remote winds from the Bay of Bengal (see section 2.7.3 for details). The wind-driven upwelling was weaker than that caused by the propagation of these waves.

The dominance of these waves suggests that upwelling indices based on Ekman theory (Pankajakshan, 1997; Bakun et al., 1998) do not provide a complete picture of coastal upwelling along the west coast of India. The weak alongshore winds, however, would still contribute to upwelling and cannot be neglected (Shankar 2002; Suresh et al., 2013). It is to be noted that, unlike the west coast of India, the southern tip of India is unique in the sense that the Findlater jet is parallel to the coast and causes strong Ekman Transport (Bakun et al., 1998; Smitha et al. 2008). The wind-induced coastal upwelling index here was almost five times that observed along the southwest coast of India (Bakun et al., 1998). The study also hypothesized that the strong upwelling near the southern tip could generate coastal-trapped waves that could propagate along the west coast of India.

https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-2020-486
Preprint. Discussion started: 9 February 2021

878 **2.7.2 Observations**

879 The double oscillation, as observed by Sewell (1929), is evident in the SST climatology from the satellite data (**Figure 14a,**
880 **15a**). The temperature peaks during April and is highest along the southwest coast of India. The area surrounding the
881 southwest coast of India, where the temperature remains above 30^{o}C, is often referred to as the Arabian Sea mini warm pool,
882 and this region is thought to play an essential role in the onset of the summer monsoon (Vinayachandran and Shetye,
883 1991;Rao and Sivakumar, 1999; Shenoi et al., 2005; Kurian and Vinayachandran, 2007; Vinayachandran et al., 2007). The
884 increase in temperature is attributed to air-sea fluxes and is independent of the SST changes observed during the winter
885 monsoon. The temperature begins to drop after April and is the lowest during July and August. The drop in temperature
886 starts in the south and progresses northwards within a month. The progression of SST towards the north, also observed in
887 hydrography data (Sarma, 1968 and Longhurst and Wooster, 1990), could be linked to the poleward propagation of coastal
888 Kelvin waves. A typical first or second baroclinic mode Kelvin wave would cover the entire west coast of India within 7-
889 21 days (these waves are sometimes too fast to be detected by a satellite over a small domain).

890 As the satellite SST only permits the assessment of near-surface processes, we use the *North Indian Ocean Atlas* (Chatterjee
891 et al., 2011) to identify the variations in the thermocline along the west coast of India (**Figure 14**). The atlas includes data
892 from the Indian Exclusive Economic Zone (EEZ) and has more stable values in this region compared to the *World Ocean*
893 *Atlas* (Antonov et al., 2010; Locarnini et al., 2010). Along the southwest coast of India, the isotherms tilt upwards by April
894 (**Figure 14b-c**). By June, the cooler water starts touching the surface, and the upwelling becomes more intense by July and
895 August. The isotherms start lowering by September-October, and surface waters become warmer. In the north, the surface
896 layers are cooler during April, and the downwelling of isotherms persists till June. The isotherms begin to rise by July-
897 August, but they are very weak compared to the southwest coast of India. Unlike the SST, the depth of 26^{o}C isotherm shows
898 an annual cycle. The depth decreases during summer and increases during winter. The lag associated with poleward
899 propagation of the Kelvin wave is also evident in the isotherm depth (See Figure 7 in Shah et al., 2015 and Figure 6 in
900 Shankar et al., 2019). The larger width of the upwelling region in the south is also indicative of the westward propagation
901 of Rossby waves, whose westward phase speed decreases with latitude. The westward drift of chlorophyll along with Rossby
902 waves is evident in the satellite data but is not as prominent as seen during the winter monsoon (Amol, 2018; Amol et al.,
903 2020).

904 Since wind is the primary driving factor for upwelling around the world, it is essential to look at its behavior along the west
905 coast of India. Although the monsoon winds are strong (**Figure 15d,e**), they mainly blow perpendicular to the coast. The
906 alongshore component of the wind is weak and equatorward all around the year. The winds peak during July along the
907 entire west coast and this increase in the magnitude of the alongshore wind intensifies the upwelling during the summer
908 monsoon. It is only at the southern tip of India that the alongshore winds reverse with the season. Upwelling indices
909 calculated using wind data show that the upwelling along the west coast of India is weak compared to the upwelling around

https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-2020-486
Preprint. Discussion started: 9 February 2021

Somalia, Oman, Tanzania, and south Madagascar but is equivalent to that in Mozambique and west Madagascar (Bakun et al., 1998). As the alongshore winds are weak compared to the cross-shore, there is also an ambiguity in the direction of the wind reported by previous authors (Sarma, 1978; Shetye et al., 1985;Shah et al., 2015). For example, Shah et al., (2015) showed that the alongshore winds were equatorward during the summer monsoon, but only south of 17°N. The difference here lies in the angle of rotation applied to compute the alongshore component of wind. Shah et al. (2015) used coastline angle, which is almost parallel to the longitude in the north. The wind vectors in **Figure 15** are pointing northeast, which would lead to a poleward wind when rotated based on coastline angle. The slope angle, which is used to compute the alongshore wind in **Figure 15**, is different from the coastline angle because of the widening of the continental shelf north of 15°N (see 1000 m contour in **Figure 15a**).

Unlike the alongshore wind, which is unidirectional, the alongshore WICC and the sea level anomaly show a strong seasonal cycle (**Figure 15,f**). The current (sea level anomaly) is equatorward (low) during summer and poleward (high) during winter. The reversal in current follows the drop in sea level, and the flow is poleward in March, which is much before the onset of the summer monsoon. The early reversal of current is also evident in direct current measurements (Amol et al., 2014; Chaudhuri et al., 2020). Unlike the sea level, the currents, particularly along the southwest coast of India, have a significantly larger intraseasonal component (Vialard et al., 2009; Amol et al., 2014; Chaudhuri et al., 2020). The current could flow in either direction during a particular time of a year, and the frequent intraseasonal bursts would further make it difficult to predict its direction. Still, it was the early reversal of current during March that prompted Banse (1959) to discard wind as the driving factor for upwelling.

In response to the raising of the isotherms, chlorophyll also increases from April onwards (**Figure 15c**). The chlorophyll concentration is highest along the southwest coast of India and peaks during July-August. During this time, the wind, the sea level, and the SST are at their peak phase as well. The increase in chlorophyll concentration is weakest along the central west coast of India and only extends over a few months. In the north, the chlorophyll is high all around the year because of the winter convective mixing that follows the upwelling in the summer.

2.7.3 Modelling and mechanisms

McCreary et al. (1993) used a series of reduced-gravity model experiments to show that the upwelling along the west coast was driven by remote forcing. They concluded that winds in the Bay of Bengal and the equator caused upwelling along the west coast of India. The local winds, however, enhanced upwelling, but their contribution was weaker than that by remote winds. They noted that the driving mechanism for upwelling was the generation of coastal Kelvin waves by winds along the western boundary of the Bay of Bengal. These winds generated upwelling Kelvin waves that propagated equatorward (with the coast on the right) along the east coast of India, turned around Sri Lanka, and propagated poleward along the west coast of India. The poleward propagation explained why the upwelling is delayed in the north. Shankar and Shetye (1997)

https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-2020-486
Preprint. Discussion started: 9 February 2021

941 further highlighted the mechanism for the early onset of upwelling using an analytical model. They showed that the
942 upwelling along the west coast of India and the Lakshadweep low formed in the southeastern Arabian Sea resulted from
943 poleward propagation of Kelvin waves and westward radiation of Rossby waves, which supported the results shown by
944 McCreary et al. (1993).

945 Modeling studies for upwelling using ocean general circulation models are very few. Haugen et al. (2002) used a 5-6 km
946 resolution coastal model that was nested into large-scale models. Their simulations were consistent with the observations
947 shown by Johannessen et al. (1981). The model upwelling began during April and persisted till October, and was most
948 intense along the southwest coast of India. Models run by Rao et al. (2005) and Rao et al. (2008) had restricted model
949 domains, which would not accurately represent the role of remote forcing on upwelling.

950 Lévy et al. (2007) used both satellite chlorophyll and a physical model to assess the timing of the phytoplankton bloom and
951 its related dynamics. They showed that the onset of summer blooms in the southeastern Arabian Sea occurred during March
952 and was primarily driven by upwelling. The horizontal currents had a limited role in driving the blooms. Koné et al. (2013)
953 arrived at the same conclusions using a biophysical model. They further showed high values of NO3-that were associated
954 with the vertical advection in this region.

955 A more recent and extensive study shows that differences in the strength of upwelling between north and south could affect
956 the nature of fisheries along the coast of India (Shankar et al., 2019). In the south, stronger upwelling permits the growth of
957 larger phytoplankton owing to a greater supply of nutrients, whereas in the north, phytoplankton tends to be smaller in size
958 owing to weaker upwelling. The large phytoplankton is directly fed by planktivorous fishes that are not common in the
959 north.

960 In summary, model simulations show that the upwelling is primarily driven by poleward propagation of coastal Kelvin
961 waves. The linear wave theory explains the early onset of upwelling and the progression of upwelling from south to north.
962 The alongshore winds also favor upwelling and could contribute significantly to its variability along the coast. A detailed
963 analysis using observations and numerical models would be required to delineate the relative contribution of the wind and
964 large-scale waves during the peak of the summer monsoon.

965 **2.7.4 Biogeochemistry**

966 Unlike most parts of the world ocean, the biophysical provinces of the Indian Ocean vary seasonally (Rixen et al., 2020;
967 Lévy et al., 2007). This is because during both the monsoons, the underlying mechanisms for nutrient intrusion that support
968 elevated primary productivity are different during summer and winter. During summer, there is strong coastal upwelling,
969 while cooler and dry air from the northern Indian subcontinent drives convective mixing in the Arabian Sea during winter
970 (Madhupratap et al., 1996).

https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-2020-486
Preprint. Discussion started: 9 February 2021

One of the most fascinating biogeochemical aspects on the west coast of India has been the seasonal occurrence of two phytoplankton blooms of the different phylum. First, there are winter mixing driven blooms of *Noctiluca* scintillans (hereafter *Noctiluca*), a mixotrophic dinoflagellate that occur during winter in the northern Arabian Sea (Prakash et al., 2008; do Rosario Gomes et al., 2008; Rixen et al., 2020). And almost at the same time, there are massive cyanobacterial blooms of *Trichodesmium* (N_2 fixers) in the central – eastern Arabian Sea during March-May until summer monsoonal turbulence brings it down (Capone et al., 1998; Gandhi et al., 2011; Kumar et al., 2017).

The occurrence of *Noctiluca* blooms was first discovered in the early part of this century and seemed to have displaced the previously occurring diatom blooms in this region (do Rosario Gomes et al., 2008; Sarma et al., 2018). These blooms create a biogeochemical divide – making the northern Arabian Sea more productive than its southern part (Prakash et al., 2008). These massive outbreaks of *Noctiluca* blooms were reported to be fueled by an unprecedented influx of oxygen-deficient waters into the euphotic zone (do Rosário Gomes et al., 2014). However, such claims have been refuted (Prakash et al., 2017) and proved that they are naturally driven by changes in nutrient stoichiometry (Lotliker et al., 2018; Sarma et al., 2018).

Once nutrients supply driven by the winter mixing is consumed and the ocean begins to stratify, *Trichodesmium* blooms start to appear by early spring in the central Arabian Sea (Capone et al., 1998; Mulholland and Capone, 2009). These become so massive in the eastern Arabian Sea that they fix up to 34 mmol N m^{-2} d^{-1}, which is the highest reported rate of N_2 fixation ever among the world oceans (Gandhi et al., 2011; Kumar et al., 2017). In fact, when similar conditions prevail during fall intermonsoon immediately after the summer monsoon upwelling, the N_2 fixation rate makes a surplus contribution to the nitrogen-nutrients to fuel primary production in the eastern Arabian Sea (Singh et al., 2019).

N_2 fixers are associated with excess phosphate (compared to NO3- if normalized as per the Redfield Ratio) concentration (Deutsch et al., 2007). Summer upwelling of oxygen-deficient waters along the shelf break is the major process regulating the biogeochemistry on the west coast (Gupta et al., 2016). Summer upwelling, driven by high primary production, is followed by the occurrence of denitrification (a nitrogen loss process) at subsurface layers (500-2000 m) in the eastern Arabian Sea (Naqvi et al., 2000), which would make these layers phosphate-rich. Hence, in this cycling, the upwelling would intrude phosphate-rich water to the sea surface (Sudheesh et al., 2016). The notion is that once parts of upwelled nutrients are utilized by autotrophs in the sunlit layers, it will create a niche for N_2 fixers. However, recent studies suggest that N_2 fixers can also occur in eutrophic conditions (Landolfi et al., 2015).

2.7.5 Variable impact of coastal upwelling on the biogeochemistry of east and west coasts of Arabian Sea

There are distinct differences in the observed biogeochemical processes between eastern and western upwelling regions of the Arabian Sea. The major differences are:

https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-2020-486
Preprint. Discussion started: 9 February 2021

(1) Along the western Arabian Sea, the upwelling is more vigorous, with the surface temperature reaching as low as 16°C (Swallow and Bruce, 1966). These waters are enriched with macronutrients (the near-surface NO_3^- recorded up to 15-20 µM (Smith and Codispoti, 1980; Morrison et al., 1998), which triggers large phytoplankton blooms; these upwelled waters transport quickly to the offshore due to strong Ekman flow. This leads to the extent of upwelling induced fertilization and the high phytoplankton bloom to a distance exceeding ~1000 km offshore (Naqvi et al., 2003, 2006).

(2) The eastern part is net heterotrophic whereas its western counterpart is net autotrophic (Sarma, 2004) due to the upwelled waters in the western Arabian Sea having a high initial oxygen concentration, and a vigorous upwelling and narrow shelves do not allow the upwelled waters to stay long enough to develop intense hypoxia (Naqvi et al., 2010).

(3) Unlike the eastern Arabian Sea, the influence of freshwater is very weak in the western Arabian Sea, and therefore the nearshore regions are not strongly stratified. This leads to sufficient ventilation to the sub-pycnocline waters to a more oxygenated condition.

The progression of upwelling over the eastern Arabian Sea is slow, and the upwelled waters sustain 4-6 months over the shelf (Gupta et al., 2016); i.e., a wider shelf over the eastern Arabian Sea allows the upwelled waters to persist long enough till the oxygen is completely utilized and seasonally cover the entire shelf (area ~200,000 km^2), making it the largest shallow water oxygen-deficient zone in the world (Naqvi et al., 2000). The intensely oxygen-depleted environment favors the development of diverse microbial populations that utilize anaerobic pathways to derive energy, mediating elemental transformations that are of immense geochemical significance (Wright et al., 2012). Denitrification is one of the classical examples for this kind, which makes the eastern Arabian Sea upwelling system one of the 'hot spots' of N_2O production in the world ocean with N_2O saturations up to 8250% (Naqvi et al., 2005). Moreover, these upwelling regions are also characterized by a high production of other climate-relevant trace gases such as CH_4 and dimethyl sulfide (Naqvi et al., 2010; Shenoy et al., 2012). Further, spring *Trichodesmium* blooms seem to be responsible for the emission of volatile organic compounds, such as isoprene – a precursor of ozone formation in the troposphere, in the eastern Arabian Sea (Tripathi et al., 2020a,b). The upwelling biogeochemistry of this seasonal oxygen-deficient zone also significantly impacts the cycling of several other micronutrients, like manganese, iron, etc. (Breitburg et al., 2018).

The variability in magnitude and intensity of upwelling and the characteristics of upwelled waters play a major role in shaping biogeochemistry of the eastern Arabian Sea shelf that designates it as a 'Hotspot' for greenhouse gas production during the summer monsoon. The upwelled waters are hypoxic in the south (Gupta et al., 2016) and suboxic in the central-eastern Arabian Sea (Sudheesh et al., 2016). This combines with strong thermohaline circulation leading to high oxygen demand over the central shelf, relative to the south, making the region extremely oxygen-depleted and sulphidic with H_2S levels goes up to ~15 µM in the nearshore waters (Naqvi et al., 2006, 2009). While the hypoxic upwelling over the southern shelf restricts the denitrification to sediment, the anoxic/sulphidic conditions over the central shelf extend its occurrence to

https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-2020-486
Preprint. Discussion started: 9 February 2021

the water column as well (Sudheesh et al., 2016). Though the waters over the western Arabian Sea shelf are net autotrophic (Sarma, 2004), moderately low surface pH (<7.9) was recorded during the summer monsoon (Takahashi et al., 2014). Being limited with very few studies on carbon dynamics over both east and west coasts, the temporal evolution of surface ocean acidification is still not clear, although Kanuri et al. (2017) reported pCO_2 up to 630 µatm along the southeastern Arabian Sea shelf and even levels exceeding 1000 µatm are common during peak upwelling (Sudheesh, 2018). Refuting the charges levied by huge productions of CO_2 and N_2O, massive methane loss through anaerobic oxidation by sulphate in the nearshore waters of the eastern Arabian Sea during late summer monsoon upwelling (Sudheesh et al., 2020) is a great relief to the environment as the potential greenhouse effect is naturally diluted by converting methane to CO_2 (the latter is almost 300 times less potential compared to former).

On comparable lines of intensification of oxygen deficiency in the western Arabian (Piontkovski and Al-Oufi, 2015), eastern Arabian Sea shelf was also earlier reported with such intensification (Naqvi et al., 2000, 2006), but the comparison of monthly studies for one year in 2012 with similar data set from July 1958 to January 1960 (Banse, 1959) revealed remarkably little change in oxygen concentrations (Gupta et al., 2016; Figure 16) with inter-annual variations between the years supported by global climatic events such as IOD, ENSO, etc., as these warm years impact upwelling intensity and prevents the anoxia formation on the shelf (Parvathy et al., 2017).

The productivity of the western Arabian Sea has earlier been shown to increase over the years (Goes et al., 2005) due to the warming of the Eurasian landmass, but such a trend was not discernible over the eastern Arabian Sea (Prakash and Ramesh, 2007) as neither wind speeds nor SSTs could show any significant change. Although no information available on such recent trends, the dissolved oxygen concentrations of recent years were comparable with that of five decades ago over the southwest coast of India (Gupta et al., 2016) despite the period gained significant developmental activities on the hinterland co-occurred with a steep rise in Arabian Sea warming. In the absence of climatology data, the maintained dissolved oxygen levels can be considered as a proxy to show the sustained upwelling intensity and biogeochemistry of this region. Further, the upwelling intensity and consequent biological production over its eastern part are several-fold less than the western region. Yet, the famous and thickest Arabian Sea oxygen minimum zone (OMZ) is closer towards the eastern side, underlying the importance of circulation in OMZ formation and source water characteristics for upwelling induced primary production. Though the upwelling over both east and west coasts is progressed from south to north during the summer monsoon, the coast of Somalia is pronounced with significant gradients in biological production – several folds high in the north during the advanced phase of summer monsoon when nutrients from local upwelling as well as advected from south support enhanced growth of phytoplankton (Lakshmi et al., 2020). In contrast, the productivity of eastern upwelling is higher in the south due to relatively intense upwelling compared to its north (Gupta et al., 2016; Shankar et al., 2019). Though upwelling over the west coast is much intense, it never experienced strong oxygen-depleted conditions, unlike its east coast. The strong biological pump (Ekman transport) operating from the west coast transports organic matter too far off distances

https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-2020-486
Preprint. Discussion started: 9 February 2021

beyond the central Arabian Sea and pushes the OMZ towards the east (Naqvi et al., 2003, 2006). Being closer, these OMZ waters feed the eastern Arabian Sea upwelling and develop hypoxic/anoxic conditions there (Gupta et al., 2016; Sudheesh et al., 2016, 2020). The upper 300m water column of the western Arabian Sea (Oman region) has witnessed warming by ~1.5°C from 1960 to 2008; it lost dissolved oxygen by ~1 ml L^{-1} (at 100m) and became near anoxic with oxycline shoaled at ~19 m per decade during this period (Piontkovski and Al-Oufi, 2015). While it was hypothesized that the upper ocean warming reduces ocean mixing and biological production in the western Arabian Sea (Roxy et al., 2016), it was quickly refuted as a northward shift in monsoon low-level jet can orient the wind angle to the Oman coast in such a way that the net upwelling increases and so the primary production (Praveen et al., 2016). In the scenarios of such increasing upwelling and shoaling of oxycline, if more deoxygenated/near anoxic waters upwell, it may turn the future of the west coast comparable to the present-day east coast in terms of biogeochemistry under seasonal hypoxia/anoxia.

The impact of upwelling on oxygen concentration has a profound socio-economic impact too as it directly affects living resources and biodiversity (Panikkar and Jayaraman, 1966; Naqvi et al., 2006). Though the available information from the Arabian Sea is scanty, the mesopelagic fish populations appear to be impacted by a reduction in suitable habitat as respiratory stress increases due to deoxygenation (Naqvi et al., 2006). Benthic ecosystems along the eastern Arabian Sea affected worst owing to the unusually large area of continental margins being exposed to hypoxic/anoxic waters (Helly and Levi, 2004). During this period, the density and diversity of larger benthic fauna (prawns, crabs, mollusks, etc.) become insignificant, and groups that are sensitive to hypoxia, like echinoderms, are either absent or least abundant (Parameswaran et al., 2018). However, macro-infaunal communities are overwhelmingly dominated by deposit-feeding opportunistic polychaetes, particularly the proliferation of juveniles (Abdul Jaleel et al., 2015). The upwelling region of the Arabian Sea is a major ground for fishery potential in terms of their eggs laying and recruitment succession. The upwelling induced high primary production supports higher trophic level productivity but with less biodiversity. It is found that upwelling intensity and coastal currents during summer monsoon are highly influencing fish eggs transport, their recruitment success rate, and juveniles transport.

2.8 South Coast of Sri Lanka

The upwelling off the southern coast of Sri Lanka (which is slightly tilted towards the north in the east) begins with the onset of the SWM, during the last week of May or during the first of June, and continues through October. The coastal upwelling here is primarily caused by summer monsoon winds, which have a strong alongshore component along the southern coast of Sri Lanka (Vinayachandran et al., 2004). The SMC that flows eastward to the south of Sri Lanka and northeastward to the east of Sri Lanka (Vinayachandran et al., 1999, 2018; Webber et al., 2018; Rath et al., 2019) influences the advection of cold upwelled water. During the early part of the SWM, some advection of cooler water occurs towards the south, away from the coast. During the later half, most of the upwelled water flows into the BoB along with the SMC

https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-2020-486
Preprint. Discussion started: 9 February 2021

(Vinayachandran et al., 2004; Das et al., 2018; Vinayachandran et al., 2020). Numerical simulations have successfully reproduced the upwelling along the southern coast of Sri Lanka (Vos et al., 2014).

Satellite-derived chlorophyll data (**Figure 17)** during summer monsoon clearly shows that the coastal upwelling has a clear expression on the biogeochemistry (Vinayachandran et al., 2004; Vinayachandran 2009). The chlorophyll concentration is high near the coast in response to upwelling. In addition, the advection by SMC spreads water from near the coast towards the east of Sri Lanka, impacting a larger region. In situ sampling to quantify the physical and biological impacts of upwelling around Sri Lanka is yet to take place. The physical impact on the ecosystem in this upwelling zone is complex, owing to the simultaneous influence of multiple factors. The upwelled water advects to the southern coast of Sri Lanka from the southern tip of India and the Gulf of Mannar. There is additional advection along the path of the SMC. Finally, the currents along the east coast of Sri Lanka is southward during summer, being the eastern arm of the cyclonic gyre, associated with Sri Lanka Dome (SLD, Vinayachandran and Yamagata, 1998). There are indications from model simulations that the pCO2 distribution is impacted by the combined influence of upwelling and advection (Chakraborty et al., 2018). On the whole, satellite-derived SST and chlorophyll data clearly show an active upwelling zone along the southern coast of Sri Lanka, which draws out a definite response from the ecosystem and biogeochemistry.

Using shipboard observations, Jyothibabu et al. (2015) suggest that capping of the upper layer by low salinity water in this region can restrict the chlorophyll concentration in the near-surface layers. Using the glider data set, Thushara et al. (2019) has provided in situ observational evidence for the chlorophyll blooms associated with SLD. The observed bloom followed a period of Ekman suction caused by cyclonic wind stress curl, and the decay was caused by the arrival of Rossby waves from the east. Model simulations (Thushara et al., 2019) support these processes and suggest that the Ekman pumping is capable of enriching the euphotic zone with nutrients, but there is a lack of corresponding in situ observations that are much needed to validate these processes.

2.9. East Coast of India

2.9.1 Physical Processes

Circulation in the Bay of Bengal (BoB) is driven by a rather intricate combination of local winds over the BoB and remote forcing originating from the equatorial Indian Ocean. During the southwest monsoon, strong southwesterly winds along the western boundary of the BoB (WBoB) makes conditions favorable for coastal upwelling (Shetye et al., 1991; Shankar et al., 1996; McCreary et al., 1996; Vinayachandran et al., 1996; Shankar et al., 2002; Thushara and Vinayachandran, 2019). The winds are northeasterly during the northeast monsoon, which is favorable to coastal downwelling (Shetye et al., 1996). BoB is also known for high SST (average temperature greater than 28 C) (Vinayachandran and Shetye, 1991; Shenoi et al., 2002) and the formation of several low-pressure systems (Sikka 1980; Gadgil et al., 2004). A significant amount of freshwater influx from major river sources like Ganga, Brahmputra, etc., plays a dominant role in stratifying the upper layer affecting

https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-2020-486
Preprint. Discussion started: 9 February 2021

the strength and intensity of coastal upwelling (Vinayachandran et al., 2002; Behara and Vinayachandran, 2016; Thushara and Vinayachandran, 2016). Additionally, coastal processes in the WBoB are influenced by complex bathymetry, shallow mixed layer, the formation of mesoscale eddies, and propagations of large-scale planetary waves (Mukherjee et al., 2017). Detailed description of the East India Coastal Current (EICC) and its variability, based on moored observations, are given in Mukherjee et al. (2014) and Mukhopadhyay et al. (2020).

Unlike the Arabian Sea, which experiences intense upwelling along the Somalia and Kerala coasts in the western and southeastern coasts, respectively, during the summer monsoon, the Bay of Bengal experiences feeble upwelling near India and Sri Lanka (Shetye et al., 1991; Vinayachandran et al., 2004). The first evidence of coastal upwelling along WBoB was observed between 1952–1965, during IIOE. The first published report, although insufficient to present evidences of coastal upwelling or downwelling for a season, along WBoB using hydrographic data, was by La Fond (1954, 1957, 1958, 1959). Evidence of coastal upwelling during summer monsoon along the east coast of India was reported by Varadachari (1961). Murty and Varadachari (1968) found stronger upwelling at Visakhapatnam compared to Chennai during both spring and summer seasons. Similarly, upwelling at the northern part of the east coast of India (**Figure 18**) was also reported by several investigators (Murty, 1958; Murthy, 1981; Gopalakrishna and Sastry, 1984; Rao et al., 1986, Shetye et al., 1991).

Satellite altimeter data show that mesoscale eddies (both upwelling (cyclonic) and downwelling (anticyclonic) favorable) play a dominant role in causing coastal upwelling/downwelling in the BoB (Ali et al., 1998; Gopalan et al., 2000; Chen et al., 2012; Nuncio and Kumar, 2012; Cheng et al., 2013; Mukherjee et al., 2019). However, the vertical structure of mesoscale eddies along WBoB is still unknown due to the lack of appropriate in-situ measurements. As cyclonic eddies upwell cold water from its lower base to upper depth and enhance vertical mixing (Falkowski et al., 1991; Kumar et al., 2004), and vertical structure of eddies affect the strength of upwelling and associated transport of heat, salt, and nutrients in the ocean (Chaigneau et al., 2011; Dong et al., 2014), it is required to understand the role of eddies in the upwelling along the east coast of India.

Model simulations that began in the 1990s to investigate EICC found local wind-driven coastal upwelling along WBoB during the summer season compared to spring and northeast monsoon (McCreary et al., 1996; Shankar et al., 1996; Vinayachandran et al., 1996). During spring, seasonal sea level variability along WBoB is dominated by remote forcing that originating from interior Ekman pumping in the BoB, the equatorial Indian Ocean, and alongshore wind along the eastern and northern boundary of the BoB (McCreary et al., 1996; Vinayachandran et al., 1996; Aparna et al., 2012; Mukherejee et al., 2017). During the winter, seasonal coastal downwelling occurred due to the northeasterly winds (McCreary et al., 1996; Shetye et al., 1996). Based on satellite and in-situ observations and models, Shankar et al. (2002) showed that the dynamics of sea level and associated upwelling along WBoB at seasonal time scales could be explained using linear theory.

https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-2020-486
Preprint. Discussion started: 9 February 2021

At interannual time scales, dynamics of sea level and associated upwelling are dominated by El Niño-Southern Oscillation (ENSO) and Indian Ocean Dipole (IOD) (Saji et al., 1999). During ENSO and IOD events, interannual variability of sea level is influenced by remotely propagating waves from the equatorial Indian Ocean (Clarke and Liu, 1994; Rao et al., 2009; Aparna et al., 2012; Mukherejee and Kalita, 2019). At intraseasonal time scales, coastal upwelling or downwelling is dominated by mesoscale eddies formed due to instability of the ocean (Nuncio and Kumar, 2012; Chen et al., 2012; Cheng et al., 2013; Mukherejee et al., 2017).

Recent studies also showed that Andaman and Nicobar Islands (ANIs) play a dominant role in the dynamics of sea level and associated upwelling along WBoB (Chatterjee et al., 2017; Mukherjee et al., 2019) by influencing the wave propagation. While propagating in the interior BoB, the Rossby wave is significantly modified in the presence of ANIs (Chatterjee et al., 2017) and generates coastal upwelling by the formation of mesoscale eddies in the WBoB (Mukherjee et al., 2019). Another significant force for modifying coastal upwelling comes from freshwater discharge by rivers (Behara and Vinayachandran, 2016). Owing to the presence of fresh river water, barrier layer formation is common in the northern Bay of Bengal (Vinayachandran et al., 2002), which has the potential to weaken upwelling (Behara and Vinayachandran, 2016). However, the impact of river runoff inhibits upwelling only towards the end of the summer monsoon (**Figure 19**), and the local winds sustain upwelling for most of the summer monsoon (Thushara and Vinayachandran, 2016)

In summary, coastal upwelling along WBoB is not simply local wind-driven but affected by several oceanic processes, which includes mesoscale eddies, remote forcing from equatorial Indian Ocean & interior BoB, freshwater forcing from rivers, etc. At the seasonal time scale, coastal upwelling along WBoB is dominated by linear processes either by local wind or remotely propagating waves. At interannual time scales, sea level variability along WBoB is dominated by remotely propagating waves from the equatorial Indian Ocean. At intraseasonal time scales, mesoscale eddies dominate sea level variability. More in-situ observations are necessary in order to understand the vertical structure of coastal upwelling at intraseasonal, seasonal, and interannual time scales. Additionally, ocean models need to be better parameterized for resolving vertical processes near the coast related to mixed layer, thermocline, barrier layer, vertical stratification, etc, based on in-situ observations.

2.9.2 Ecosystem Response & Biogeochemical impacts

Biogeochemistry of the Bay of Bengal: Despite being situated at similar latitudes and experiencing similar monsoonal force, the Bay of Bengal is a low productive basin compared to the Arabian Sea. The large influx of freshwater leads to a strong salinity gradient that stratifies the upper layer and also leads to the formation of the salinity-driven "barrier layer," particularly during the peak discharge season in the summer monsoon (Vinayachandran et al., 2002). This restricts entrainment of nutrients into the upper sunlit layer. The inorganic nutrient (nitrate and phosphate) transport through rivers

https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-2020-486
Preprint. Discussion started: 9 February 2021

draining into the bay is also abysmal (Sengupta et al., 1981; Sengupta and Naqvi 1984). The salinity driven stratification is so strong that monsoonal winds are unable to erode them and inject nutrients from the subsurface layer. The surface chlorophyll concentration is therefore, always low in the Bay of Bengal. However, the basin is characterised by the perennial presence of sub-chlorophyll maximum (SCM), which is located at 40-90 m depth (Prasanna Kumar et al., 2007; Thushara et al., 2019). Cyclonic old-core eddies, which are predominantly present in the Bay of Bengal, do pump nutrients into the upper layer and can enhance the productivity by more than two-fold (Prasanna Kumar et al., 2007; Singh et al., 2015). Anticyclonic eddies, on the other hand, recharge the subsurface layer with dissolved oxygen and restrict the strengthening of the OMZ. Episodic atmospheric disturbances such as depressions and cyclones also erode the stratification by churning up the ocean and inject nutrients into the upper sunlit layer to fuel productivity (Gomes et al., 2000; Vinayachandran and Simi 2003; Sarma et al., 2013; Vidya et al., 2017).

One of the most intriguing aspects of the BoB is that its organic carbon export fluxes are comparable to that of the Arabian Sea though the bay is less productive (Ittekot et al., 1991; Lee et al., 1998). Various theories have been proposed to explain observed high fluxes in the bay, such as the ballasting effect due to high terrigenous input by the river (Ittekot et al., 1991), low respiration rates (Naqvi et al., 1996), high new production (Sanjeev Kumar et al., 2004) to list a few. The ballasting effect helps flux material to coagulate, enhances the particle sinking rate (Ramaswamy et al., 1991), and decreases the remineralisation in the upper layer, thereby decreasing the biological oxygen demand in this layer. These all collectively impact the dissolved oxygen concentration in the bay and does not make it denitrifying.

Upwelling in the Bay of Bengal: Though feeble, the upwelling in the Bay of Bengal does drive regimes of high productivity in the southwestern region during the Southwest monsoon (Vinayachandran et al., 2004) and in the northeastern region during the northeast monsoon (Vinayachandran, 2009). The nitracline, usually situated at a depth of ~75 m, below the stratified layer, shoals upward by poleward flowing EICC during the pre-southwest monsoon and enhances productivity (Gomes et al., 2000). But despite nutrient enrichment due to upwelling, the highest productivity was found in the eddy region along the coast during the pre-monsoon. During the post-monsoon, although the wind-driven upwelling and river discharge increased the column chlorophyll concentration by nearly five-fold, the productivity decreased to half (Gomes et al., 2000) due to light limitation.

OMZ in the Bay of Bengal: Like the Arabian Sea, the Bay of Bengal also hosts a thick oxygen minimum zone in its core despite having low surface production. However, unlike the Arabian Sea, which has significant seasonal variability in the OMZ, the Bay of Bengal OMZ is seasonally stable but has significant short-term temporal variabilities (Johnson et al., 2019). The high temporal variability can be attributed to the supply/injection of oxygen to the deeper layer by mesoscale eddies and sporadic cyclonic activities (Sarma and Bhaskar, 2018; Joshnson et al., 2019), which can help break the surface layer stratification. The freshwater driven stratification has profound effects on the oxycline variability as well. Prakash et al. (2013) showed, using Argo-Oxygen data, that the oxycline in the Bay of Bengal is shallower than the Arabian Sea and has a strong correlation with sea level anomaly. They also suggested that such a strong correlation is possible only when the

https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-2020-486
Preprint. Discussion started: 9 February 2021

physical properties played a dominant role in defining the Oxygen minimum zone. The biological activity, however, can determine the strength of the OMZ. Sarma et al. (2013) showed that freshwater discharge during the southwest monsoon and associated organic debris input can help intensify the OMZ in the bay.

The high surface productivity may not necessarily translate into high export production, and this probably explains the absence of seasonality in the Bay of Bengal OMZ. Anand et al. (2018) found that export production at 100 m depth in the BoB was much less compared to that in the Arabian Sea, which indicated high utilization of organic matter by the heterotrophs (Anand et al., 2017). This has implications for dissolved oxygen concentration in the BoB. The BoB, though harbors low oxygen water in its core, its concentration is slightly above compared to its counterpart, the Arabian Sea, and therefore was not denitrifying yet. Bristow et al. (2017), based on dissolved oxygen measurements using STOX sensors, suggested that dissolved oxygen concentration in the bay is much lower than earlier believed and suggested that any further increase in primary productivity in the basin in the climate change scenario may lead to the formation of dead zones and severely impact fisheries. Sridevi and Sarma (2020) argue that the observations of Bristow et al. (2017) may be biased due to the selection of sites for sampling as most of the samples were collected from the outer boundary of the anticyclonic eddies. Sarma and Bhaskar (2018), however, showed using Bio-Argo data that eddies recharge the subsurface water with dissolved oxygen and is probably one of the reasons why the bay is still not denitrifying. Johnson et al. (2019) further argued, based on the Argo float-derived long-term oxygen and NO3-data, that highly variable dissolved oxygen concentration, owing to injection of oxygen by eddies, helps BoB remain above the threshold limit to support denitrification. Any climate-driven change in eddies distribution and the number of occurrences may alert this balance and drive bay towards a denitrifying basin. At the same time, increasing occurrences of cyclonic activity may counterbalance an apparent decrease in the number of eddies in the future under the climate change scenario.

Primary and New production: The established belief is that BoB is less productive (344 ± 164 MgC/M2/d; Gauns et al., 2005) compared to the Arabian Sea (1,032 ± 260 MgC/m2/d; Barber et al., 2001). A recent study of Anand et al. (2018) however, reported that productivity in the bay (936 ± 350 MgC/m2/d) is comparable to that in the AS and suggested that the earlier reports underestimated the productivity partly due to less spatial coverage. Saxena et al. (2020) also recently observed ~5-fold increase in productivity compared to the earlier reports (Madhupratap et al.,2003) and suggested that the increase in productivity over the past two decades is in-line with the observed increase in the global marine primary production. The lower concentration of nutrients, particularly NO3-, does not explain the observed high productivity. Sarma et al. (2019) showed that 40-75% of the column productivity was observed in the upper 25m of the water column where the inorganic component of nutrient was limiting (0.2uM), but dissolved fraction was available at much higher concentration (>6uM). Therefore, uptake of DON by plankton may be responsible for the observed high productivity.

The new production, measured using ^{15}N tracer, in the BoB was higher during the pre-monsoon (5±4 mmol N/m2/d) compared to the post-monsoon (2.6 mmol N/m2/d) (Kumar et al., 2004; Gandhi et al., 2010). The f-ratio, which provides information about the fraction of primary production that can be exported to the deep, has been estimated to be high in the BoB (Gandhi et al., 2010): it was higher during the pre-monsoon (~0.7) compared to post-monsoon (0.5). The high *f*-ratio

https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-2020-486
Preprint. Discussion started: 9 February 2021


Biogeosciences Discussions Open Access EGU

was in good agreement with the earlier estimates of high export fluxes in the bay (Ittekot et al., 1991). Sarma et al. (2018b), however, Anand et al. (2018) argued that the estimated high f-ratio needs to be revisited since most of the organic matter produced in the upper sunlit layer is remineralised and the export below 100m depth is quite low (<2% of the production). They reported f-ratio, estimated using the isotopic signature of nitrogen in the particulate organic matter, to be less than 0.31 even at the core of the cyclonic eddies; f-ratio was further lower in non-eddy and anticyclonic regions.

N_2 fixation: Bio-available NO3-being below the detection limit in the upper water column of BoB and an apparent nitrogen deficit of 4.7± 2.4 Tg N/yr indicates the importance of dinitrogen fixation in the basin (Loscher et al., 2020). Though the presence of Trichodesmium in the bay has been reported by several authors, direct measurement of N_2 fixation rates was available from this basin till recently. Indirect estimates of N_2 fixation in the bay, using other proxies such as atmospheric soluble iron deposition, phosphorus limitation, and mass balance, range between 0.4 –1 TgN/Yr (Bikkina and Sarin 2013). Low $\delta^{15}N$ in the sinking matter also indicates a considerable amount of dinitrogen fixation in the bay. A recent report based on a field survey conducted in 2014 during the winter monsoon did not find detectable dinitrogen fixation in the bay despite having N_2 fixer community in the water column (Loscher et al., 2020). Since the sampling was carried out in the Oxygen minimum zone layer below the photic zone (>60m) and mostly diazotrophs are found in near-surface waters, the fixation rates were below the detection limit. The isotopic analysis of the settling flux also did not indicate significant N_2 fixation. Saxena et al. (2020) recently reported first N2 fixation rates from the bay using $^{15}N_2$ tracer gas experiment. Despite getting the signature of N2 fixation in the particulate organic matter ($\delta^{15}N$ ~0-6‰), the N_2 fixation rates were very low (4 to 75 µmol N/m2/d): the maximum fixation rates were measured at the surface, which decreases with the depth. Saxena et al. (2020) further argued that fixation rates are too low to support high nitrogen demand for the observed primary productivity rates and contributes to only 1% of the observed productivity of the bay. A considerable NO3- deficit, undetectable NO3- concentration in the upper water column, presence of diazotrophs capable of doing N_2 fixation, and yet only 1% contribution towards the primary productivity of the bay indeed calls for a more focussed approach to measure fixation rates in this important basin.

Modeling Biogeochemical processes in the Bay: Vinayachandran et al. (2005) made the first attempt to use a four-component ecosystem model coupled with a general circulation model to simulate the evolution of phytoplankton bloom in the bay during the northeast monsoon. The biogeochemical simulation successfully captured the bloom evolution supported not only by the entrainment of nutrients but also through upward transport of significant amounts of chlorophyll from the sub-surface layer. It highlights the contribution of deep chlorophyll maxima in the observed surface bloom. Thushara and Vinayachandran (2016) later studied the evolution of phytoplankton bloom in the northwestern bay during the summer monsoon. Their chlorophyll simulations could successfully capture the seasonal distribution of biomass, including the coastal blooms at major river discharge mouths, and were in good agreement with the satellite-derived chlorophyll data. The bloom intensity, however, is more realistic in the east of Srilanka and also in parts of the Andaman Sea. At other places, models tend to underestimate the chlorophyll values in comparison with the satellite chlorophyll. Thushara and Vinayachandran (2016) argued that the negative bias might be due to overestimation in the satellite-derived chlorophyll.

https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-2020-486
Preprint. Discussion started: 9 February 2021

Their biogeochemical simulations showed that as the river plumes were pushed away due to coastal upwelling, they did not change the biological production in model simulations. Surface winds appear to have significant control over governing bloom in the southwestern bay during the summer monsoon. Chakraborty et al. (2018), a high-resolution biogeochemical model coupled with Regional Ocean Modelling System (ROMS), investigated the CO2 dynamics of the Sri Lanka dome region, which experiences intense upwelling during the southwest monsoon and showed that biological processes in the upwelling region contribute towards draw-down of the pCO2. Their simulations indicated that biological processes dominate over the physical upwelling in terms of the CO2 outgassing and leads to a net decrease (~11uatm) of pCO2. Shallower nitracline in the region pumps more nutrients into the upper layer and fuels biological production that compensates for the CO2 outgassing. In fact, the region becomes a sink for CO2 despite having significant upwelling. These new results vouch for more concerted modeling efforts in the bay, a basin that has received insufficient modelling attention.

To summarize, recent studies indicate that the bay still remains largely an unexplored region for the following reasons: 1. sources of nutrients such as dissolved inorganic nitrogen and its contribution to the primary production is heavily underestimated, 2. The historical data and understanding of the quantum of primary productivity also have been questioned in the new estimates, 3. A large influx of debris and dissolved organic matter and their decomposition have huge contributions to the outgassing. They have ramifications on the carbon budget for the bay and also on the ocean acidification at least near the zones of such discharges and 4. Finally, all of these have an impact on the dissolved oxygen content at the mid-depth layer in the bay. New state of the art instruments, measurement techniques, and sustained long term observations can help understand and predict if the bay will be the "next hotspot" waiting to explode under climate change.

2.10 Sumatra and Java

The upwelling off the southern coasts of Sumatra and Java Islands is a remarkable eastern boundary upwelling system (EBUS) in the Indian Ocean. Comparing with the other EBUS in the Pacific and Atlantic Oceans (Chavez et al., 2009), however, the upwelling system in the Sumatra-Java coast had been overlooked until recently despite its important roles in climate and ecosystem dynamics. This is because the average magnitude of the upwelling signals is smaller compared to the other major EBUS in the world, due partly to a strong seasonality associated with monsoonal wind forcing and partly to the existence of the Indonesian throughflow to the east and south of the upwelling region (Qu et al., 1994; Du et al., 2005). In addition, the insufficient availability of in-situ data and complex geometry near the Indonesian Seas make detailed investigations difficult.

The Sumatra-Java upwelling region is embedded in rather complex upper-layer circulations in the southeastern tropical Indian Ocean between Indonesia and Australia (**Figure 20**). Seasonally changing South Java Coastal Current is associated with the monsoonal wind reversal and is directly linked with the upwelling system (Quadfasel and Cresswell, 1992; Sprintall et al., 1999). The westward flowing South Equatorial Current, a part of which is fed by the Indonesian throughflow from

https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-2020-486
Preprint. Discussion started: 9 February 2021

the Indonesian Archipelago, is located to the south of the upwelling region (e.g., Qu and Meyers, 2005a). Since the Sumatra-Java upwelling region sits close to the equator (from the equatorial region down to around 9°S), the equatorial and coastal waveguide affects variability in upwelling signatures significantly.

A major feature of the upwelling in this region is the seasonal variation associated with the monsoonal wind along the coasts; the upwelling favorable southeasterly winds prevail during boreal summer while the northwesterly winds appear during boreal winter, which generates downwelling condition. Wyrtki (1962) is the first to demonstrate that the Ekman upwelling along the coast of Sumatra and Java occurs during the boreal summer associated with the local southeasterly monsoon over the region. Upwelling signatures in this region are well observed in in-situ measurements and satellite remote sensing observations as in the other upwelling regions; e.g., cooler SST and subsurface temperature, shallower thermocline depth and lower sea surface height, and higher chlorophyll-a and nutrients concentrations compared to the surrounding area (e.g., Wyrtki, 1962; Susanto et al., 2001; Susanto and Marra, 2005; Iskandar et al., 2017) **(Figure 20)**. The upwelling signatures propagate to the west in association with the westward movement of the along-shore winds (Susanto et al., 2001). However, locations of maximum amplitude of the upwelling signatures may differ in space among the variables due to dynamical upper-ocean responses to the wind forcing. One such example can be seen in a phase relation between the winds and SST along the Java coast; strong winds appear in the western area of the Java coast while the SST signal comes further east (Naulita et al., 2020). In addition to this local wind forcing, the Sumatra-Java coastal area is affected by remotely forced Kelvin waves propagating from regions further northwest along the Sumatra coast and from the equatorial Indian Ocean. Several studies have shown that both the local wind forcing and this remote wave influence play key roles in determining the magnitude and area of the Sumatra-Java upwelling (e.g., Cheng et al., 2016; Horii et al., 2016; Delman et al., 2018).

The local and remote influences vary year-to-year, generating interannual variability of upwelling strength and spatial coverage. The most significant interannual variability in the tropical Indian Ocean is the Indian Ocean Dipole Mode (IOD), whose center of action in the eastern pole appears over the Sumatra-Java upwelling region. During the positive IOD, the southeastern Indian Ocean, particularly along the Sumatra-Java coasts, are occupied by negative SST anomaly, which tends to be phase-locked to the seasonal upwelling during the boreal summer to fall. While the cool SST in seasonal variation is pronounced along the Java coast (see **Figure 20**), the interannual SST anomaly appear in both Sumatra and Java coastal regions with relatively stronger signal off the coast of Sumatra. Besides, the upwelling variability in the interannual time-scale is also related to ENSO phenomena in the Pacific Ocean (Susanto et al., 2001; Susanto and Marra, 2005), partly due to co-occurrence of ENSO and IOD in some years and also to atmospheric teleconnections from the Pacific for modifying the strength of along coast component of the wind stress over Sumatra and Java. Oceanic teleconnections from the Pacific through the Indonesian archipelago via the Indonesian throughflow may also affect the upwelling variability.

There have been attempts to investigate the ocean processes responsible for the seasonal and interannual variations in the mixed-layer or upper-layer temperature using heat/temperature budget analyses. Both the seasonal and interannual variations

https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-2020-486
Preprint. Discussion started: 9 February 2021

1365 are dominated by vertical processes associated with the Ekman upwelling, with significant contributions from horizontal
1366 advection, including the one from the Indonesian throughflow (e.g., Qu et al., 1994; Du et al., 2005, 2008). The barrier layer
1367 is also affecting the seasonal SST variability, especially in the region off the Sumatra coast (Du et al., 2005; Qu et al.,
1368 2005b). For interannual time-scales, the SST variability is driven by both the local and remote wind forcing, both of which
1369 are strongly related to the IOD and to a lesser extent to ENSO, while the thermocline depth variations are mostly due to the
1370 remote wave influences from the equatorial eastern Indian Ocean (Chen et al., 2016). There are several studies, including
1371 those under the IIOE-2 program, focusing on the roles of variability in the upwelling region on the evolution of IOD events.
1372 Initiation of positive IOD events is related to anomalous cooling off the coast of Sumatra-Java, which may be generated by
1373 local winds, particularly along the coast of Sumatra Island (Delman et al., 2016, 2018; Kämpf and Kavi, 2019), or remotely
1374 forced Kelvin wave signal originated in the equatorial Indian Ocean (Horii et al., 2008). During the mature stage of the
1375 positive IOD, vertical upwelling processes, as well as horizontal advection, contribute to keeping anomalous cooling of the
1376 SST off the coasts of Sumatra and Java (Du et al., 2008; Chen et al., 2016). While the seasonal March to the northwesterly
1377 monsoon condition terminates this maintaining process forced by local and remote winds, oceanic eddy heat flux associated
1378 with mesoscale eddies generated by enhanced instability during the height of the positive IOD is also shown to facilitate the
1379 disappearance of the anomalous conditions in the strong events (Ogata and Masumoto, 2010, 2011).
1380
1381 The upwelling off Sumatra and Java is also affected by intraseasonal variability in the ocean and atmosphere. This
1382 intraseasonal variability is, as in the case of seasonal and interannual variations, due both to the local winds and to remotely
1383 forced oceanic Kelvin waves (Iskandar et al., 2006; Horii et al., 2016). Even during the height of the positive IOD in 2008,
1384 strong intraseasonal upwelling signals are observed in temperature and salinity profiles obtained by Argo floats (Horii et al.,
1385 2018). In addition, a long-term trend in the upwelling strength is studied recently. For example, Varela et al. (2016) suggest
1386 the weakening of the upwelling although the SST shows a cooling trend due to cooler subsurface temperature. Sources of
1387 this upwelled water mass are not clearly determined yet. A study using a numerical model proposes the Indonesian
1388 throughflow as a possible source for the upwelling water off the Java coast (Valsala and Maksyutov, 2010), while another
1389 study suggests that water mass from the northwest via South Java Current could be upwelled in this region (Varela et al.,
1390 2016).
1391
1392 As in the other EBUS, high biological productivity is expected in the Sumatra-Java upwelling region during boreal summer
1393 and fall (Wei et al., 2012), with high nutrient and chlorophyll-a concentrations along the coasts (e.g. Wyrtki 1962; Tranter
1394 and Newell, 1962; Susanto et al., 2001; Asanuma et al., 2003; Iskandar et al., 2009). Spatial distributions and temporal
1395 variations of various biogeochemical parameters have been detected from in-situ observations, coral records, and sediment
1396 cores for the present situations and paleo-oceanographic conditions (e.g., Grumet et al., 2004; Murgese and De Deckker,
1397 2005; Andruleit 2007; Andruleit et al., 2008; Baumgart et al., 2010; Ehlert et al., 2011). Recent in-situ observations in the
1398 Sumatra-Java upwelling region conducted during the IIOE-2 period indicate different phytoplankton compositions and

https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-2020-486
Preprint. Discussion started: 9 February 2021

assemblages between upwelling and non-upwelling regions (Gao et al., 2018) and physical and biological processes that determine aragonite saturation state (Xue et al., 2016). Efforts to develop and improve biogeochemical models of the upwelling systems are also in progress (e.g., Sreeush et al., 2018). These researches on biogeochemistry are important to understand key processes operating in the Sumatra-Java upwelling system. However, these results are rather fragmented at this stage, and integrated studies on biophysical interactions, ecosystem dynamics, and the marine food web in the Sumatra-Java upwelling region would be strongly required.

During the IIOE-2 period (2015 - 2020), Argo float measurements and satellite remote sensing data have been accumulated significantly, and there were several in-situ observations of physical and biogeochemical aspects of the upwelling system. These data sets provide us key evidences for a better understanding of physical processes responsible for the upwelling variability in various time-scales and of distributions of biogeochemical variables. However, in-situ measurements are still quite limited to obtain a synthetic view of the upwelling system off Sumatra-Java coasts, particularly on biogeochemical parameters. Mixed-layer dynamics and mixing processes in this unique region for relating subsurface oceanic variability to SST need to be investigate in more detail. Further observations and accumulation of additional evidences are necessary to obtain a comprehensive view of the upwelling system off the Sumatra-Java coasts.

2.11 West coast of Australia

2.11.1 Overview

Unlike other eastern boundary systems, such as the highly productive Humboldt and Benguela upwelling systems, the west coast of Australia features a downwelling current that carries tropical water southward along the shelf-break (Pearce, 1991). In the late nineteenth century, the presence of tropical corals at the Abrolhos Islands (28°- 29°S 114° E) was observed by Saville-Kent (1897), and from sea temperature measurements, he postulated that there was an offshore, warm, southward-flowing current. A drift-card study conducted near Rottnest Island (32°S, 115°E) confirmed that during the austral winter, there was a southward flowing current (Rochford, 1969), and Gentilli (1972) explored the seasonal southward progression of “rafts” of warm water off the west coast of Australia.

The Leeuwin Current (LC) was named and described by Cresswell and Golding (1980) from the trajectories of satellite-tracked buoys and measurements of surface temperature and salinity from the shelf and slope stations. Other early studies of the LC, which included using current meters, shipboard measurements, satellite imagery, steric height gradients, wind stress calculations, and modeling, identified the seasonal nature of the current, origins along the North West Shelf, an eastward extension to the Great Australian Bight, the frequent presence of meanders and eddies and low nutrient status (Godfrey and Ridgway, 1985; Holloway and Nye, 1985; Pearce, 1991; Smith et al., 1991; Thompson, 1984; Thompson and Veronis, 1983; Weaver and Middleton, 1989). Essentially, the alongshore steric height gradient is set up by the Indonesian throughflow (which delivers warm, less saline waters from the Pacific into the Indian Ocean) and surface heat loss at higher latitudes (Smith et al., 1991). Later, using remote sensing and modeling, research attention centered on understanding the

https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-2020-486
Preprint. Discussion started: 9 February 2021

influence of the LC on the recruitment of puerulus larvae of the economically-important rock lobster *Panulirus cygnus* (e.g., Griffin et al., 2001; Phillips and Pearce, 1997).

More recent shipboard studies along the entire west coast of Australia (Weller et al., 2011; Woo and Pattiaratchi, 2008) provided more detailed information on the trajectory and features of the LC, including the chemistry, primary production, zooplankton and larval fishes (Buchanan and Beckley, 2016; Holliday et al., 2012; Lourey et al., 2012; Sutton and Beckley, 2016; Thompson et al., 2011). Further, remote sensing and modeling have confirmed the seasonal nature of the LC and the influence of the El Niño Southern Oscillation with stronger LC flows occurring during La Niña years (Domingues et al., 2007; Feng et al., 2003). The ecological significance of the LC eddy field was investigated with two dedicated voyages (Paterson et al., 2008; Waite et al., 2007b). The most recent ecological work explored the significance of the LC and its eddy field on the ecology of the planktonic phyllosoma of *P. cygnus* in the wake of a drastic decline in puerulus settlement (Saunders et al., 2012; Säwström et al., 2014; Waite et al., 2019).

Many of the early studies on the LC noted the occurrence of inshore northward-flowing currents during the summer months (e.g., Thompson and Veronis, 1983; Thompson, 1984) with Holloway and Nye (1985) specifically mentioning upwelling along the northwest coast. Subsequent studies highlighted regional upwelling nodes (see below) and, using an upwelling index developed from 15 years of satellite data, (Rossi et al., 2013b) produced a synopsis covering the development of sporadic upwelling events (generally lasting 3-10 days) along the entire western coast of Australia (**Figure 21 and 22**). Although such upwelling generally occurs from September to April (austral summer) sporadic events can occur at any time north of 30°S (**Figure 23**). Upwelling favorable winds, local topography, and the characteristics of the LC such as onshore geostrophic flow, stratification, mesoscale eddies, and meanders influence the intensity of intermittent upwelling. For this review of upwelling along the western coast of Australia, we have separated the coast into three nodes of upwelling, namely, the South West (35^{o}-30^{o} S), Central (30^{o}-25^{o} S), Gascoyne (25^{o}- 22^{o} S) and will also cover upwelling in the eddy field.

2.11.2 Upwelling nodes

South West

A northward-flowing inshore current along parts of the southwest coast was indicated by several early LC studies (Cresswell et al., 1989; Cresswell and Peterson, 1993; Cresswell and Golding, 1980; Pearce, 1991; Thompson, 1987). For example, Cresswell and Peterson (1993) noted in the austral summer of 1986-87 that a cold upwelling plume (<17.5°C) extended westward along the shelf from the southern coast of Western Australia around Cape Leeuwin and northward to Cape Naturaliste. They speculated that the absence of the LC south of 34°S might have allowed upwelling-favorable easterly winds on the south coast to drive this upwelling. From a detailed analysis of satellite imagery (1987-1993) and environmental data, Pearce and Pattiaratchi (1999) described the narrow, northward flowing counter-current between Cape Leeuwin and Cape Naturaliste during the austral summer months and named it the Capes Current. They indicated that strong northward wind stresses between November and March slowed the LC and drove the Capes Current and that localized upwelling also contributed to it. This upwelling was examined by Gersbach et al. (1999) using XBT, CTD, nutrient, and ADCP data from

https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-2020-486
Preprint. Discussion started: 9 February 2021

summer sections off Cape Mentelle (located between Cape Leeuwin and Cape Naturaliste) and several sections between Albany and Perth, as well as wind data and satellite imagery. They concluded that northward wind stress in summer could overcome the alongshore steric height gradient on the continental shelf, inducing the thermocline to lift and sporadic upwelling to occur 5-9 times per summer. Interestingly, the T/S characteristics of the water upwelled at Cape Mentelle were slightly different from that of the current setup from the south (Gersbach et al., 1999).

Rossi et al. (2013b) indicated that, overall, the transient upwelling events in this southwest region last 3-10 days, and shelf regions between 34°S and 31.5°S exhibit up to 12 upwelling days per month during the austral spring/summer (Figure 22). Historical current measurements near Perth suggest that the Capes Current continues northwards past Rottnest Island, and there may also be links with shelf counter-currents well past the Abrolhos Islands at 29^{o}S (Cresswell et al., 1989).

2.11.3 Central coast

Along the central Western Australian shelf inshore of the Leeuwin Current, there is a general northward flow during the austral summer months based on current measurements across the shelf near the Houtman Abrolhos Islands (Cresswell et al., 1989; Rochford, 1969). Rossi et al. (2013b) indicated a high upwelling index along the central coast with locations around 28^{o}S and 26^{o} S producing elevated mean numbers of upwelling days per year. Interestingly, both show peaks in upwelling from March to May, with upwelling at 28^{o} S continuing through the austral winter.

2.11.4 Gascoyne coast

The Gascoyne coast is characterised by a northward flowing inshore current known as the Ningaloo Current. Various studies have revealed that the Ningaloo Current consists of water sourced from upwelling of shallow water (~100 m) from the base of the LC (Hanson et al., 2005; Taylor and Pearce, 1999; Woo and Pattiaratchi, 2008; Woo et al., 2006a, 2006b). Previously, it was understood to be strongly seasonal in the austral summer, but recent investigations have shown autumn upwelling events as well (Lowe et al., 2012; Xu et al., 2013; Rossi et al., 2013a). The source water in autumn may be from a greater depth (150m) under the increased mixed layer depth (Rossi et al., 2013a). The Ningaloo upwelling region around 22.5^{o}S has the highest number of upwelling days per year (140), and the events are often longer in duration than elsewhere on the west coast (Rossi et al., 2013b).

2.11.5 Biogeochemical & ecological impacts

Nutrients, primary productivity, pro- and micro-eukaryotes

In the next section, we explore how the regional dynamics along the west coast of Australia control the spatio-temporal variability of biogeochemical cycles, such as primary productivity and nutrient cycles in general. Water column productivity along the west coast of Australia (generally <200 mg C m^{-2} d^{-1}; Hanson et al., 2005) peaks at the deep chlorophyll maximum

https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-2020-486
Preprint. Discussion started: 9 February 2021

(DCM), which is closely aligned with the base of the nutricline. Productivity at the DCM in this system is strongly influenced by the mixed layer depth (MLD), with deeper DCMs having lower productivity and shallower DCMs resulting in higher productivity rates (Hanson et al., 2007a; Johannes et al., 1994).

Furnas (2007) argued that intermittent bursts of high productivity could occur in specific locations or under certain circumstances along this coast. The strength of the LC is controlled by the weakening of southerly winds in the austral autumn and winter. Modeling results from Feng et al. (2003) suggest that an increase in the southward transport of the LC has been linked to an erosion of the thermocline, which then brings NO_3^- into the euphotic zone, thereby enhancing primary productivity in early autumn (Feng et al., 2009; Rousseaux et al., 2012). Satellite observations across the shelf and LC confirmed these results with the highest chlorophyll levels in autumn and winter (Lourey et al., 2006; Lourey et al., 2012). Similarly, in summer, the wind-driven Capes Current locally enhances productivity near the shelf (Pearce and Pattiaratchi, 1999), yet, generally, the oligotrophic nature of this system limits NO_3^- driven new production throughout the year (Hanson et al., 2005; Twomey et al., 2007). The recycling of organic matter, however, via microbial regeneration has been shown to primarily control the rates of primary production in this system (Hanson et al., 2007b; Pearce et al., 2006; Twomey et al., 2007) rather than the strong upwelling as seen in other eastern boundary systems, such as the Humboldt and Benguela systems (Hood et al., 2017).

The inputs of new N derived from N_2 fixation is also an important pathway supporting primary productivity in this region. Along the Western Australian shelf from 32°S northwards to 12°S, and west to 110°E, the contribution of new N from N_2 fixation towards the total dissolved inorganic nitrogen (DIN) assimilation pool can be ~ 20% and up to 50% during the winter months (with N_2 fixation rates ranging from 0.01 up to 12 $nmol^{-1}\ L^{-1}\ h^{-1}$), making N_2 fixation equal to NO_3^- in terms of N assimilation into this ecosystem (Raes et al., 2015; Raes et al., 2014). Waite et al. (2013) and Raes et al. (2015) also noted that the small diffusive deep-water NO_3^- fluxes are not able to support the measured NO_3^- assimilation rates. Their data suggest that nitrification above the nutricline (referred to as "shallow nitrification"; see also Thompson et al., 2011) could be an important pathway of the N-cycle along the southwest coast of Australia. Waite et al. (2016) suggested that the persistent layers of low oxygen, high dissolved nitrogen (LDOHN; O_2 ~150 µmol L^{-1} and NO_3^- ~2-10 µmol L^{-1}) just below the euphotic zone (~150-250m; Thompson et al., 2011; Weller et al., 2011) are hotspots for the mineralization of organic material from local sources (< 500 km away). In addition, Waite et al. (2016) noted that the depletion of oxygen in these isolated layers along with the release of NO3-, could happen on a time-scale of ~2 weeks. Warren (1981), on the other hand, originally suggested that the isolated nature of the lower oxygen features is created by density gradients, which prevent the mixing of deep O_2 rich water. According to Thompson et al. (2011) and Weller et al. (2011), the source of the oxygen minimum layer is associated with multiple water masses further upstream, possibly at lower latitudes north of Australia. Overall, a number of studies point to the conclusion that an active microbial loop (Azam et al., 1983) controls the biogenic C and N fluxes through heterotrophic recycling via ammonification, nitrification, and N_2 fixation in this vast region (Hanson et al., 2007b; Raes et al., 2015; Waite et al., 2016).

https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-2020-486
Preprint. Discussion started: 9 February 2021

The west coast of Australia has been suggested to have a subtropical phytoplankton cycle, with a winter bloom, similar to the open ocean waters of the subtropical South Indian Ocean (**Figure 24).** Picoplankton (unicellular cyanobacteria and prochlorophytes) have been shown to contribute >40% of the pigment biomass (Hanson et al., 2007b). In terms of bio-volume, the Dinophyceae, including large gymnoids and other Dinophyceae (e.g., *Gyrodinium* spp., *Prorocentrum* spp.), are the most abundant microplankton and can account for up to 50% of the microplankton component in this region (Raes et al., 2014). Sightings of N_2-fixing microorganisms (such as *Trichodesmium*) in the oligotrophic waters off the west coast of Australia date back to voyages of Captain Cook and Charles Darwin (Cook et al., 1999; Darwin, 1889). *Trichodesmium* occurrences have been measured at the Australian National Reference stations from the tropics (Darwin) to the temperate waters off Rottnest Island.

Amplicon sequencing of the nitrogenase (*nifH*) gene, however, has shown a low diazotrophic evenness across a transect along the shelf from Perth (32°S) to Darwin (10°S). One operational taxonomic unit (OTU) made up 65–95% of the *nifH* enzyme diversity along the transect, and was identified as a Gamma 4 proteobacteria (Raes et al., 2018). This dominant *nifH* OTU was nearly identical (one nucleotide difference) to the gamma 4 proteobacteria (HM201363.1) found by Halm et al. (2012) in the oligotrophic South Pacific Gyre. The ubiquitous finding of these gamma proteobacterial *nifH* genes is consistent with the results from Schmidt et al. (1991) and Langlois et al. (2015) in open, oligotrophic oceanic waters.

2.11.6 Zooplankton

Ecological studies about zooplankton community structure along the west coast of Australia are few, and most studies have examined specific taxa (e.g., larval fishes, chaetognaths, or krill) particularly in relation to the effect of the LC on dispersal (Beckley et al., 2009; Buchanan & Beckley, 2016; Holliday et al., 2012; Sutton & Beckley, 2016). Although inshore stations (50 m depth) were sampled during the voyage when most of these studies were made (extending from 22°S - 34°S), there was no evidence of coastal upwelling, likely because it was conducted in the austral autumn (May 2007). Recently, meso-zooplankton abundance, composition, and diversity data from the three years (2010-2012) that the IMOS Australian National Reference Stations (Ningaloo, Rottnest Island, and Esperance) were concurrently sampled were analyzed (McCosker et al., 2020). Besides the obvious influence of the LC in winter, there were clear dissimilarities between the copepod assemblages, particularly during the summer months when coastal upwelling-associated currents such as the Capes and Ningaloo Currents influenced the biota.

Specific effects of coastal upwelling on zooplankton have not been explored in the South West, but concurrent with the phytoplankton study of Koslow et al. (2008) across the Two Rocks transect north of Perth, mesozooplankton assemblages were examined (Strzelecki and Koslow, 2006). During the summer, the inshore shelf stations were found to have significantly higher zooplankton abundance than the offshore sampling stations, but this was reversed in the winter months when the LC was flowing strongly. Copepod production ranged from 0.4-10 mg C m^{-2} d^{-1} (Strzelecki and Koslow, 2006),

https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-2020-486
Preprint. Discussion started: 9 February 2021

which is low compared to upwelling regions elsewhere in the world but comparable to copepod production in the North West Cape region (McKinnon and Duggan, 2003). Along the same cross-shelf transect, Muhling and Beckley (2007) and Muhling et al. (2008b) found clear seasonal differences in the diversity and abundance of inshore larval fish assemblages when the cool Capes Current was flowing northwards during the austral summer compared to the austral winter months when the LC strongly influenced larval fish assemblages on the continental shelf.

Little is known about the effect of coastal upwelling on zooplankton along the central part of the Western Australian coast, and the only extensive zooplankton survey in the region targeted the phyllosoma larvae of the rock lobster, *Panulirus cygnus*. Nevertheless, the study highlighted the presence of the Abrolhos front separating the tropical waters of the LC from the dominant oligotrophic subtropical surface water (STSW), and the LC waters had much higher chlorophyll *a* and zooplankton concentrations than the STSW (Säwström et al., 2014).

In the north, the coastal copepod communities at Ningaloo are diverse (> 120 species; McKinnon and Duggan 2001). They are characterized by small "upwelling- ready" species, which can react quickly to pulses of sporadic upwelling and phytoplankton blooms, but, unlike the high primary production rates, copepod production rates are generally low (~ 13 mg C m^{-2} d^{-1}; Hanson and McKinnon, 2009). Interestingly, *Calanoides carinatus*, a copepod that is characteristic of upwelling regimes elsewhere, was absent, and they proposed that upwelling was too infrequent and episodic to sustain zooplankton specific to upwelling regimes. Of the macro-zooplankton, krill, especially, *Pseudeuphausia latifrons* has been investigated in coastal waters at Ningaloo (Wilson et al., 2003), and seasonal occurrence of whale sharks has been linked to aggregations of this species during the austral autumn months (Hanson and McKinnon 2009).

2.11.7 Fisheries

Investigations into the spawning of sardines (*Sardinops sagax*) off southwestern Australia have highlighted advective transport (Fletcher et al., 1994; Gaughan et al., 2001b) and variation in the growth rate of larvae from areas with different levels of productivity (Gaughan et al., 2001a). Muhling et al. (2008a) showed that, although adult sardines had a winter spawning peak coinciding with the seasonal peak in chlorophyll *a* (Koslow et al., 2008), it also matched the seasonal peak in the southward flow of the LC, resulting in low retention of the early life history stages. Thus, egg and larval concentrations were lower than expected in winter but higher in summer when retention conditions were more favorable. They postulated that, as larval growth rates were actually high, the insignificant catches of adults in the fishery compared to other eastern boundary upwelling systems was due to a combination of suppression of large-scale upwelling and the modest seasonal maximum in primary productivity occurring during the time least favourable for pelagic larval retention.

There has been commentaries on the role of the Capes Current in assisting migrations of south coast fish species such as *Arripis truttaceus* and *Arripis georgianus* in their migrations to autumn spawning areas in southwestern Australia and subsequent return transport of early life stages by the LC during winter (Pearce and Pattiaratchi, 1999). Both Caputi et al. (1996) and Lenanton et al. (2009) have reviewed the importance of the LC with respect to Western Australian fisheries and

https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-2020-486
Preprint. Discussion started: 9 February 2021

have noted the likely role of the Capes Current for several species, including the economically important rock lobster. Through modeling, Feng et al. (2010) examined dispersal and retention areas along the west coast. Although the LC was dominant in winter, northward flow in summer was linked with recruitment success of scallops (*Amusium balloti)*, abalone (*Haliotis roei),* and tropical sardines (*Sardinella lemuru)*.

2.11.8 Eddies

The vast eddy-field associated with the LC is well-known and has been investigated by numerous oceanographers and shown to influence regional biogeochemistry and pelagic ecology (e.g., Andrews, 1977; Feng et al., 2007; Waite et al., 2007b; Moore et al., 2007; Paterson et al., 2008; Holliday et al., 2011; Dufois et al., 2014). Though the warm, anticyclonic eddies have been explored in greater detail than the cyclonic eddies, it is the latter which are cold-core upwelling systems and deserve mention here as they have been shown to drive a significant fraction of cross-shelf transport and enhance local and regional productivity (Waite et al., 2016).

A study contrasting a dipole pair of eddies off Western Australia revealed many differences in the biota between the two eddies (Muhling et al., 2007; Strzelecki et al., 2007) as a result of the differences in physical and chemical properties. Warm-core eddies (WCEs; anticyclonic) have greater surface chlorophyll signatures compared to cold-core eddies (CCEs; cyclonic) in the eastern Indian Ocean (Dufois et al., 2014; Waite et al., 2016). Yet, Waite et al. (2019) showed that CCEs actually have greater depth-integrated primary productivity as their shallower mixed layers are closer to the nutricline and across pycnocline mixing then increases the upward flux of dissolved inorganic nutrients. This results in greater flagellate and dinoflagellate populations in CCEs, which provide a high-quality food source for zooplankton, and consequently increases their lipid stores (Waite et al., 2019). Earlier work showed no significant differences between the fractionated isotopic zooplankton analyses between CCEs and WCEs but highlighted that micro-heterotrophs are positioned on a trophic level as third and fourth-order consumers (Waite et al., 2007a). The high position of micro-heterotrophs again confirms the rapid recycling of particulate organic matter in this system in general, as outlined previously (Hanson et al., 2005; Raes et al., 2014; Twomey et al., 2007). Further, upwelling eddies generated by the Leeuwin Undercurrent in the Perth Canyon have been implicated in the abundance of krill in the area and consequent feeding of migrating blue whales (Rennie et al., 2007).

2.12 Seychelles-Chagos Thermocline Ridge

The Seychelles-Chagos Thermocline Ridge (SCTR, Xie et al, 2002; Hermes and Reason, 2008; Yokoi et al., 2008; Vialard et al., 2009) is an upwelling region across the southern tropical Indian Ocean in the latitude band 5-15°S (**Figure 25**). It is characterized by a thin mixed layer (~30m) and a relatively shallow thermocline. The ridge, and the upwelling associated with it, is set up by wind stress curl patterns, and it has significant variability on seasonal and interannual time scales due to both remote and local and forcing (Xie et al., 2002; Hermes and Reason, 2008; Yokoi et al., 2008; McPhaden and Nagura,

https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-2020-486
Preprint. Discussion started: 9 February 2021

2014; Nyadjro et al., 2017). It is coincident with the southernmost latitudes of monsoon-driven circulation in the Indian Ocean, south of which a steadier trade wind regime prevails (**Figure 26**). During boreal winter, the Intertropical Convergence Zone (ITCZ) is located over the SCTR. The ITCZ and associated rainfall migrate northwards to the Indian subcontinent as the year progresses, where it is the source of precipitation during the summer monsoon.

Upwelling along the SCTR affects sea surface temperature (SST, **Figure 26**), biogeochemistry (**Figure 26**), and fisheries (**Figure 27**), and drives strong ocean-atmosphere coupling (Vinayachandran and Saji, 2008, Vialard et al., 2009; Resplandy et al., 2009; Robinson et al., 2010; Dilmahamod et al., 2016). As discussed previously, upwelling centers in the monsoon-dominated Indian Ocean are found in off-equatorial regions because the mean winds along the equator are westerly, unlike in the easterly trade wind-forced Pacific and Atlantic Oceans (Schott et al., 2009; Wang and McPhaden, 2017). The SCTR is the largest and most persistent upwelling region in the Indian Ocean.

The SCTR represents the ascending branch of the subtropical circulation cell in the southern hemisphere, where upwelling is balanced primarily by meridionally divergent flow in the surface layer (Lee, 2004; **Figure 28**). Horizontal flow in the upper ocean circulates cyclonically around the SCTR axis, with the westward-flowing South Equatorial Current (SEC) to the south and the eastward-flowing South Equatorial Countercurrent (SECC) to the north (**Figure 25**). The westward-flowing SEC in the SCTR region provides the conduit for interbasin exchanges that link the Pacific Ocean to the Atlantic Ocean through the Indonesian Seas and the Agulhas Current.

SST varies substantially in the SCTR on intraseasonal to interannual time scales because the shallow mixed layer is sensitive to changes in upwelling, vertical mixing, air-sea heat fluxes, and horizontal advection (Vialard et al., 2008; Foltz et al., 2010). On intraseasonal time scales, pronounced SST variations in the SCTR happen in response to forcing from the Madden-Julian Oscillation (MJO, Madden and Julian 1972), which is generated in this region. This variability feeds back to the atmosphere, which helps to organize the MJO convective cells. Large SST variations on interannual time scales are associated with the El Nino Southern Oscillation (ENSO) and the Indian Ocean Dipole (IOD; Webster et al., 1999; Saji et al., 1999). This year-to-year SST variability affects the frequency of Indian summer monsoon rainfall (Izumo et al., 2008), tropical storms in the southwestern Indian Ocean (Xie et al., 2002), and the climate of East Asia (Yamagata et al., 2004). The IOD also profoundly affects the tuna fishery in the Indian Ocean, which is well developed in the SCTR during normal years (**Figure 27**). However, during the positive IOD events, when upwelling is weakened in the SCTR and strengthened off the coast of Java and Sumatra, tuna migrate eastward, apparently in search of more favorable foraging grounds (**Figure 27**, Robinson et al., 2010).

Observational studies have documented concentrated tuna fishing activities at locations where surface phytoplankton blooms had been observed in satellite observations 2-3 weeks previously (Fonteneau et al. 2008), demonstrating a strong connection between the food webs that respond to SCTR blooms and the prey required by large tuna. In contrast,

https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-2020-486
Preprint. Discussion started: 9 February 2021

biogeochemical modeling results indicate that neither phytoplankton biomass nor carbon export from the euphotic zone changes significantly in response to seasonal and interannual variability of the SCTR thermocline depth (Resplandy et al., 2009). These contrasting results represent a paradox in the current understanding of ecological dynamics in the SCTR upwelling region, which can neither be so subtle as to produce no biogeochemical signals from the episodic nutricline intrusions into surface waters nor so strong and efficient as to produce an almost instantaneous population response of the large, long-lived prey that tuna consume. The extent to which iron may be a limiting primary production in the SCTR region is also unknown, though independent modeling studies and remote sensing-based analyses both suggest it may be (Wiggert et al., 2006; Behrenfeld et al., 2009). Finally, there is still considerable uncertainty in whether the Indian Ocean is a net source or sink of carbon to the atmosphere because the variability in pCO2 fluxes across the air-sea interface is poorly constrained by existing observations, particularly in active upwelling zones like the SCTR

3. Summary

The unique features of the oceanography of the Indian Ocean and the complexities associated with its circulation, boundary currents, climate, and ecosystem response, driven and modulated by the monsoons, have been a matter of extensive discussion in the past reviews of the Indian Ocean (Shetye and Gouveia, 1998, Schott and McCreary, 2001 Shankar et al., 2002, Hood et al. 2015). The coastal upwelling, despite its importance for the ecosystem and economic impacts, however, has not received sufficient attention (Hood et al., 2015) till the recent past. Several new programs were launched in the last decade, which has shed considerable new light on the coastal upwelling system in the Indian Ocean. The WIOURI was initiated to study nine upwelling systems in the western Indian Ocean (Roberts et al., 2015). Similarly, EIOURI was planned to study a large spectrum of processes affecting the upwelling in the eastern half of the Indian Ocean (Yu et al., 2016). Along the coasts of India, an array of ADCP mooring deployed since 2008 (Mukhopadhyay et al., 2017, Chaudhari et al., 2020) complemented intense programs such as WIOURI and EIOURI. Such programs have contributed significantly to enhancing our knowledge of the science of the upwelling in the Indian Ocean, its science, ecosystem impacts, and sensitivity to changes in the environment. The prime goal of this paper is to review the upwelling in the Indian Ocean extending from the Agulhas region to the western coast of Australia.

The Upwelling: While some of the upwelling systems, such as that along the Somali coast, were surveyed early (during IIOE or before), others such as Mozambique were sampled much later. The surveys, particularly those in the recent period, have revealed multiple processes that trigger and control upwelling, the combination varying for each of the systems. Salient features of their progress are summarized here. The northeasterly monsoon winds are favorable for upwelling along the western boundary, in the southern hemisphere, up to about 20˚S. Along the coast of Kenya, in addition to an Ekman type of mechanism, shelf-break upwelling induced by topography is a driving force. Along the coast of Tanzania, the additional forcing for upwelling is drawn from the shear instability of EACC. In the Mozambique channel, competing roles of local

https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-2020-486
Preprint. Discussion started: 9 February 2021

winds and eddies drive upwelling in the channel. South of Madagascar, upwelling is caused by local winds, the interaction of the currents with the continental margin and eddies. Eddies associated Natal pulses cause subsurface upwelling in the Agulhas region, and surface-reaching upwelling occurs in its inshore edge due to dynamical processes and wind forcing.

The distinct feature of the Somali upwelling system is the cold wedges. One wedge forms in May on the shoreward edge of the Southern Gyre during May and the other along the northern flank of the Great Whirl, during the peak of the summer monsoon. The presence of multiple gyres and the intense current present a complicated upwelling system in this region. In addition to alongshore winds, Rossby wave radiation from the east by Ekman pumping driven by anticyclonic wind stress curl drive upwelling in this region. The downwelling of the thermocline due to the wind stress curl, however, can lead to a weakening of the upwelling as the deepening reaches up to the coastal region during the fully developed phase of the SWM. Consequently, upwelling is limited to frontal regions dominated by eddies. The coast of Oman, on the other hand, presents a classical Ekman type of upwelling system. The intensity of the upwelling increases with the progress in the SWM. However, the influence of Rossby wave radiation has been suggested to affect the timing of the peak phase of the SST decrease associated with upwelling. Generation of eddies and filaments are well-known features associated with the currents and upwelling along the coast of Oman.

Along the west coast of India, upwelling is more prominent along the southern part of the coast and begins about two months before the onset of the summer monsoon. The alongshore winds are weak and are only partly responsible for the upwelling. The major driving force is the coastally trapped wave propagation originating from the Bay of Bengal. The alongshore winds are unidirectional, but the currents reverse, confirming the dominant role of remote forcing. Winds along the southern tip of India and along the southern coast of Sri Lanka drive Ekman type of upwelling during the summer monsoon. Upwelling along the east coast of India is feeble and available evidences suggest the presence of upwelling during the summer monsoon. The intricate combination of forcing by local winds, Kelvin waves originating from either EIO or the eastern boundary of the BoB, Rossby wave propagation all affect the upwelling. At interannual time scales, ENSO and IOD dominate the variability, whereas at intraseasonal time scales, mesoscale eddies appear to be important.

The upwelling along the Sumatra and Coasts is mainly driven by alongshore winds during the summer monsoon but affected by Kelvin wave propagations and circulation in the Equatorial Indian Ocean, Indonesian throughflow and the subtropical Indian Ocean. It is affected severely by the IOD events and modified significantly by intraseasonal events. The circulation along the west coast of Australia is dominated by the LC but upwelling occurs at several nodes along the coast. Transient wind-driven upwelling that lasts for 3-20 days occurs along the southwest part of the coast. Along the central coast, upwelling takes place during March-May. Along the Gascoyne coast, Ningaloo upwelling takes place during austral summer and autumn.

https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-2020-486
Preprint. Discussion started: 9 February 2021

Ecosystem Impacts: It is evident that in all regions, the upwelling stimulates an ecosystem response and the facilitation of this response is achieved by different processes in different regions. In the Mozambique channel, peripheries of the cyclonic eddies are found to be centers of biological activity in terms of increased productivity, aggregation of small organisms and foraging bird populations. Along the southern coast of Madagascar, upwelling nodes enhance primary productivity, fish catch and whale sightings. The interannual variability of the cyanobacteria bloom here is modulated by the detachment of the South-East Madagascar current. The chlorophyll concentration is high along the coasts of Somalia and Oman, during the summer monsoon, which has been known since a long time. Recent advances in this region have been slow and a modeling study suggests that the influence of upwelling is restricted to limited areas and the strong currents spread the effect tolarger spatial coverage. Off the coast of Oman, advection of nutrient-rich water can give rise to blooms in the offshore region.

Recent research has revealed the high impact of upwelling on the biogeochemistry of the eastern Arabian Sea. Most significantly, the upwelling affects the OMZ and its spatial and temporal limits, in spite of the upwelling itself being weaker compared to that in the western Arabian Sea. This has an impact on the mesopelagic fish population, benthic ecosystems, macro infaunal communities and biodiversity. The upwelling in the Bay of Bengal, on the other hand, is feeble and it is not clear what the ecosystem responses are to upwelling; The productivity appears to be more under the control of eddies and the stratification imposed by rainfall and river runoff. The upwelling along the coasts of Sumatra and Java enhances productivity and the phytoplankton composition here is distinctly different during upwelling compared to that during downwelling. Along the west coast of Australia, upwelling has a lesser role in controlling the rates of primary productivity compared to that of remineralization. However, there are indications that summertime zooplankton biota is affected by upwelling. The SCTR is a prominent open ocean upwelling region in the Southern Topical Indian Ocean that are caused primarily by the persistent wind stress curl and this upwelling has a clear expression on the surface chlorophyll distribution. This region also has a significant role in the air-sea interaction in this region.

Future prospects: Some of the upwelling zones have registered significant progress during the period of IIOE-2 (2015 onwards) while some others have rather been left behind. Agulhas current, Mozambique channel, Madagascar Coasts and coasts of India, Sumatra-Java and Africa belong to the former category whereas Somali and Oman costs to the latter. In addition, the northern coast of the Arabian Sea and the eastern boundary of the Bay of Bengal still remain poorly observed and understood. The spatial and temporal variability of upwelling is not sufficiently documented for the most part of the Indian Ocean coastline. This emphasizes the importance of sustained observations and modeling, and a combination of them.

The new knowledge that has been acquired from the recent research has posed new questions and challenges. One of them is related to the variability of upwelling. There is a considerable gap in the space-time variability of upwelling in almost all

https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-2020-486
Preprint. Discussion started: 9 February 2021

the regions, primarily owing to the lack of systematic long-term data sets with sufficient spatial resolution and coverage. Second, the processes that drive upwelling are complicated in several regions and there is no consensus or quantities account of the relative roles of each process; the role of eddies in the Mozambique channel, impact of currents along the southern coast of Madagascar and coastally trapped waves are good examples for the dichotomy. A combination of focused modeling studies and systematic observations are required to address such issues. The required in-situ observations need to be with high temporal and temporal resolutions and with the capability for long-term monitoring. In addition, intensive process-oriented observational programs are required to understand physical processes and their interconnection to the ecosystem. Such observing strategies together with high-resolution regional and global models that include both physical and biogeochemical/ecosystem components have the potential to develop strategies for sustainable uses of coastal resources. A related and more sophisticated issue is the ecosystem response and fisheries. While definite progress has been made in the Eastern Arabian Sea and off the coast of Australia, a complete picture regarding the dependence of marine biota on upwelling is yet to emerge for the entire upwelling system along the periphery of the Indian Ocean.

Author contributions: PNV planned the outline of the paper and led the paper preparation. All authors contributed to the paper preparation.

Competing interests: The authors declare that they have no conflict of interest.

Acknowledgments

This is a contribution from the Science Theme - 2 of the IIOE-2. Partial financial support from SCOR is gratefully acknowledged. PNV acknowledges partial financial support from J C Bose National Fellowship, SERB, DST, Govt. India. NIO contribution number of this paper is 10473. Thanks to Dr. D. Shankar for his comments on the manuscript.

References

Abdul Jaleel, K. U., Parameswaran, U. V., Gopal, A., Khader, C., Ganesh, T., Sanjeevan, V. N., Shunmugaraj, T., Vijayan, A. K., and Gupta, G. V. M.: Evaluation of changes in macrobenthic standing stock and polychaete community structure along the south eastern Arabian Sea shelf during the monsoon trawl-ban, *Cont. Shelf Res.* 102, 9–18,doi: 10.1016/j.csr.2015.04.011, 2015.

Ali, M. M., Sharma, R., and Cheney, R.: An atlas of the north Indian Ocean eddies from TOPEX altimeter derived sea surface heights, Spec. Publ., ISRO-SAC-SP-69-98, Indian Space Res. Organ., Bangalore, India, 69–98, 1998.

Alvheim, O., Torstensen, E., Fennessy, S., MacKay, F., Zaera, D., and Bemiasa, J.: West Madagascar: Cruise Reports Dr Fridtjof Nansen. Pelagic Ecosystem Survey SWIOFP/ASCLME/FAO, Cruise 2, 25 August–3 October 2009. Preliminary report. Institute of Marine Research, Bergen, Norway, 2009.

https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-2020-486
Preprint. Discussion started: 9 February 2021

1799 Amol, P., Shankar, D., Fernando, V., Mukherjee, A., Aparna, S. G., Fernandes, R., Michael, G. S., Khalap, S. T., Satelkar,
1800 N. P., Agarvadekar, Y., Gaonkar, M. G., Tari, A. P., Kankonkar, A., and Vernekar, S. P.: Observed intraseasonal and
1801 seasonal variability of the West India Coastal Current on the continental slope, J. Earth Syst. Sci., 123, 1045–1074,
1802 doi:10.1007/s12040-014-0449-5, 2014.

1803 Amol, P., Suchandan Bemal, D. Shankar, V. Jain, V. Thushara, V. Vijith, P. N. Vinayachandran: Modulation of chlorophyll
1804 concentration by downwelling Rossby waves during the winter monsoon in the southeastern Arabian Sea, Prog. Oceanogr.,
1805 186, 102365, doi.org/10.1016/j.pocean.2020.102365, 2020.

1806 Amol, P.: Impact of Rossby waves on chlorophyll variability in the southeastern Arabian Sea, Remote Sens. Lett., 9, 1214–
1807 1223, doi.org/10.1080/2150704X, 2018.

1808 Anand, S., Rengarajan, R., Sarma, V.V.S.S. : 234Th based carbon export flux along the Indian GEOTRACES GI02 section
1809 in the Arabian Sea and the Indian Ocean, Global Biogeochem. Cycles, 32, 417-436, Doi: 10.1002/2017GB005847, 2018.

1810 Anand, S., Rengarajan, R., Shenoy, D., Gauns, M., and Naqvi, S. W. A. : POC export fluxes in the Arabian Sea and the Bay
1811 of Bengal: A simultaneous 234Th/238U and 210Po/210Pb study, Mar. Chem., 198, 70–87,
1812 https://doi.org/10.1016/j.marchem.2017.11.005, 2017.

1813 Anderson, D. L. T., and Moore, D. W.: Cross-equatorial inertial jets with special relevance to very remote forcing of the
1814 Somali Current. Deep-Sea Research, 26, 1–22, https://doi.org/10.1016/0198-0149(79)90082-7, 1979.

1815 Andrews, J. C.: Eddy structure and the West Australian current, Deep Sea Res., 24(12), 1133-1148, doi:10.1016/0146-
1816 6291(77)90517-3, 1977.

1817 Andruleit, H., A. Lückge, M. Wiedicke, and S. Stäger: Late Quaternary development of the Java upwelling system (eastern
1818 Indian Ocean) as revealed by coccolithophores, Mar. Micropaleontol., 69, 3–15, doi:10.1016/j.marmicro.2007.11.005, 2008.

1819 Andruleit, H.: Status of the Java upwelling area (Indian Ocean) during the oligotrophic northern hemisphere winter monsoon
1820 season as revealed by coccolithophores, Mar. Micropaleontol., 64, 36–51, doi:10.1016/j.marmicro.2007.02.001, 2007.

1821 Anonymous, Temperature and monthly maps for the Indian Ocean, Edition 135, Royal Netherland Meteorological Institue,
1822 Den Haag, 1952

1823 Anonymous: World atlas of sea surface temperatures, 2nd ed., U. S. Hydrographic Office, Washington D. C. , Reprinted
1824 1948, 1944.

https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-2020-486
Preprint. Discussion started: 9 February 2021

1825 Antonov, J. I., Seidov, D., Boyer, T. P., Locarnini, R. A., Mishonov, A. V., and Garcia, H. E.: World Ocean Atlas 2009,
1826 Volume 2: Salinity, NOAA Atlas NESDIS 69, NOAA, U.S. Government Printing Office, Washington D.C, 2010.

1827 Aparna, S. G., McCreary, J. P., Shankar, D., and Vinayachandran, P. N.: Signatures of the Indian Ocean Dipole and EI
1828 Nino-Southern Oscillation events in sea level variations in the Bay of Bengal, J. Geophys. Res., 117:C10012, doi:
1829 10.1029/2012JC008055, 2012.

1830 Arístegui, J., Barton, E. D., Álvarez Salgado, X. A., Santos, A. M. P., Figueiras, F. G., Kifani, S., Hernndez-Len, S., Mason,
1831 E., Mach, E., and Demarcq, H.: Sub-regional ecosystem variability in the Canary Current upwelling, Prog. Oceanogr., 83 ,
1832 33–48, doi:10.1016/j.pocean.2009.07.031, 2009.

1833 Arunraj, K. S., Jena, B. K., Suseentharan, V., and Rajkumar, J.: Variability in Eddy Distribution Associated With East India
1834 Coastal Current From High-Frequency Radar Observations Along Southeast Coast of India, J. Geophys. Res., 123, 9101–
1835 9118, doi: https://doi.org/10.1029/2018JC014041, 2018.

1836 Asanuma, I., Matsumoto, K., Okano, H., Kawano, T., Hendiarti, N., and Sachoemar, S. I.: Spatial distribution of
1837 phytoplankton along the Sunda Islands: The monsoon anomaly in 1998, J. Geophys. Res., 108 (C6), 3202,
1838 doi:10.1029/1999JC000139, 2003.

1839 Azam, F., Fenchel, T., Field, J. G., Gray, J., Meyer-Reil, L., and Thingstad, F.: The ecological role of water-column microbes
1840 in the sea, Mar. Ecol. Prog. Ser., 10, 257-263, doi: 10.3354/meps010257, 1983.

1841 Babu, M. T., Sarma, Y. V. B., Murty, V. S. N., and Vethamony, P.: On the circulation in the Bay of Bengal during northern
1842 spring inter-monsoon (march april 1987), Deep–Sea Res. (Part II), 5, 855–865, doi:10.1016/S0967–0645(02)00609–4.,
1843 2003.

1844 Bakun, A., Roy, C., and Lluch-Cota, S. E.: Coastal upwelling and other processes regulating ecosystem productivity and
1845 fish production in the western Indian Ocean, in Large marine ecosystems of the Indian Ocean: Assessment, sustainability,
1846 and management, Edited by Sherman K., Okemwa, EN and Ntiba MJ, 103–141, Blackwell Science Inc., 1998.

1847 Banse, K.: Hydrography of the Arabian Sea Shelf of India and Pakistan and effects on demersal fishes, Deep Sea Res.
1848 Oceanogr. Abstr., 15 , 45–79, doi:10.1016/0011-7471(68)90028-4, 1968.

1849 Banse, K.: On upwelling and bottom-trawling off the southwest coast of India, J. mar. biol. Ass. India, 1, 33–49, 1959.

1850 Barber, R.T, Marra, J., Bidigare, R. C., Codispoti, L. A., Halpern, Johnson Z, Latasa M., Goericke, R., Smith, S. L.: Primary
1851 productivity and its regulation in the Arabian Sea during 1995, Deep Sea Res. Part II 48:1127-1172, doi: 10.1016/S0967-
1852 0645(00)00134-X, 2001.

https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-2020-486
Preprint. Discussion started: 9 February 2021

1853 Barlow, R., Lamont, M.-J., Gibberd, R., Airs, L., Jacobs, and Britz, K.: Phytoplankton communities and acclimation in a
1854 cyclonic eddy in the southwest Indian Ocean, Deep Sea Res. Part I Oceanogr. Res., 18–30, doi:10.1016/j.dsr.2017.03.013,
1855 2017.

1856 Baumgart, A., Jennerjahn, T., Mohtadi, M., and Hebbeln, D.: Distribution and burial of organic carbon in sediments from
1857 the Indian Ocean upwelling region off Java and Sumatra, Indonesia, Deep Sea Res.I, 157, 458-467,
1858 doi:10.1016/j.dsr.2009.12.002, 2010.

1859 Beal, L. M., De Ruijter, W. P. M., Biastoch, A. , Zahn, R., and SCOR/WCRP/IAPSO Working Group 136: On the role of
1860 the Agulhas system in ocean circulation and climate, Nature 472: 429-436, https://doi.org/10.1038/nature09983, 2011.

1861 Beal, L. M., and Chereskin, T. K.: The volume transport of the Somali Current during the 1995 Southwest Monsoon. Deep
1862 Sea Research Part II: Topical Studies in Oceanography, 50(12-13), 2077–2089, https://doi.org/10.1016/S0967-
1863 0645(03)00046-8, 2003.

1864 Beal, L. M., and Donohue, K. A.: The Great Whirl: Observations of its seasonal development and interannual variability. J.
1865 Geophys. Res. : Oceans, 118, 1–13. https://doi.org/10.1029/2012JC008198, 2013.

1866 Beal, L. M., Chereskin, T. K., Lenn, Y. D., and Elipot, S.: The Sources and Mixing Characteristics of the Agulhas Current,
1867 Journal of Physical Oceanography, 2060–2074, https://doi.org/10.1175/JPO2964.1, 36(11), 2006.

1868 Beal, L. M., Elipot, S., Houk, A., and Leber, G. M. : Capturing the Transport Variability of a Western Boundary Jet: Results
1869 from the Agulhas Current Time-Series Experiment (ACT)*, Journal of Physical Oceanography, 45(5), 1302–1324,
1870 https://doi.org/10.1175/JPO-D-14-0119.1, 2015.

1871 Beckley, L.E., Muhling, B.A. and Gaughan, D.J.: Larval fishes off Western Australia: influence of the Leeuwin Current, J
1872 R Soc West Aus, 92(2), 101-109, 2009.

1873 Behara, A., and Vinayachandran, P. N.: An OGCM study of the impact of rain and river water forcing on the Bay of Bengal,
1874 J. Geophys. Res., 121, 2425–2446, doi: :10.1002/2015JC011325, 2016.

1875 Biastoch, A., Böning, C. W., Lutjeharms, J. R. E. : Agulhas Leakage dynamics affects decadal variability in Atlantic
1876 overturning circulation, Nature, 456, 489–492, doi: 10.1038/nature07426, 2008.

1877 Böhm, E., Morrison, J. M., Manghnani, V., Kim, H. S., and Flagg, C. N.: The Ras al Hadd Jet: remotely sensed and acoustic
1878 doppler current profiler observations in 1994–1995, Deep-Sea Research II, 46, 1531–1549, https://doi.org/10.1016/S0967-
1879 0645(99)00034-X, 1999.

https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-2020-486
Preprint. Discussion started: 9 February 2021

1880 Braby, L.: Dynamics, interactions and ecosystem implications of mesoscale eddies formed in the southern region of
1881 Madagascar. MSc thesis, University of Cape Town, South Africa, 54 pp, 2014.

1882 Breitburg, D., Levin, L. A., Oschlies, A., Grégoire, M., Chavez, F. P., Conley, D. J., Garçon, V., Gilbert, D., Gutiérrez, D.,
1883 Isensee, K., Jacinto, G. S., Limburg, K. E., Montes, I., Naqvi, S. W. A., Pitcher, G. C., Rabalais, N. N., Roman, M. R., Rose,
1884 K. A., Seibel, B. A., and Zhang, J.: Declining oxygen in the global ocean and coastal waters,*Science*, *359*(6371),
1885 https://doi.org/10.1126/science.aam7240, 2018.

1886 Brinca, L., Rey, F., Silva, C., and Sætre, R.: A survey on the marine fish resources of Mozambique. October–November
1887 1980. Institute of Marine Research, Bergen, Norway, 1981.

1888 Brink, K., Arnone, R., Coble, P., Flagg, C., Jones, B., Kindle, J., Lee, C., Phinney, D., Wood, M., Yentsch, C., and Young,
1889 D.: Monsoons boost biological productivity in Arabian Sea. EOS, 27 (13), 168–169, https://doi.org/10.1029/98EO00120,
1890 1998.

1891 Bristow, L. A., Callbeck, C. M., Larsen, M., Altabet, M. A., Dekaezemacker, J., Forth, M.,: N 2 production rates limited
1892 by nitrite availability in the Bay of Bengal oxygen minimum zone. Nat. Geosci. 10:24. doi: 10.1038/ngeo2847, 2017.

1893 Brown, S. L., M. R. Landry, R. T. Barber, L. Campbell, D. L. Garrison, and Gowing, M. M.: Picophytoplankton dynamics
1894 and production in the Arabian Sea during the 1995 Southwest Monsoon, Deep Sea Res., Part II, 46, 1745 – 1768,
1895 https://doi.org/10.1016/S0967-0645(99)00042-9, 1999.

1896 Bruce, J. G.: Eddies off the Somali coast during the southwest monsoon, J Geophys. Res., 84, 7742-7748,
1897 https://doi.org/10.1029/JC084iC12p07742, 1979.

1898 Bryden, H.L., Beal, L.M. and Duncan, L.M.: Structure and Transport of the Agulhas Current and Its Temporal Variability,
1899 J Oceanogr 61, 479–492. https://doi.org/10.1007/s10872-005-0057-8, 2015.

1900 Buchanan, P., and Beckley, L.E.: Chaetognaths of the Leeuwin Current system: oceanographic conditions drive epi-pelagic
1901 zoogeography in the south-east Indian Ocean, Hydrobiologia, 763(1), 81-96, doi:10.1007/s10750-015-2364-4, 2016.

1902 Capone, D. G., Subramaniam, A., Montoya, J. P., Voss, M., Humborg, C., Johansen, A. M., Siefert, R. L., and Carpenter,
1903 E. J.: An extensive bloom of the N_2-fixing cyanobacterium Trichodesmium erythraeum in the central Arabian Sea, Mar.
1904 Ecol. Prog. Ser., 172, 281–292, doi: 10.3354/meps172281, 1998.

1905 Caputi, N., Fletcher, W., Pearce, A., and Chubb, C.: Effect of the Leeuwin Current on the recruitment of fish and
1906 invertebrates along the Western Australian coast, Mar. Freshw. Res., 47(2), 147-155, doi:10.1071/MF9960147, 1996.

https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-2020-486
Preprint. Discussion started: 9 February 2021

1907 Chaigneau, A., Le Texier, M., Eldin, G., Grados, C., and Pizarro, O.: Vertical structure of mesoscale eddies in the eastern
1908 South Pacific Ocean: A composite analysis from altimetry and Argo profiling floats, J. Geophys. Res. , 116(C11), C11025.
1909 https://doi.org/10.1029/2011JC007134, 2011.

1910 Chakraborty, K., Valsala, V., Gupta, G.V.M. and Sarma, V.V.S.S. :Dominant biological control over upwelling on pCO2
1911 in sea east of Sri Lanka, J. Geophys. Res., 123, doi:10.1029/2018JG004446, 2018.

1912 Chatterjee, A., Kumar, B. P., Prakash, S., and Singh, P.: Annihilation of the Somali upwelling system during summer
1913 monsoon. Scientific reports, 9(1), 7598. https://doi.org/10.1038/s41598-019-44099-1, 2019.

1914 Chatterjee, A., Shankar, D., McCreary, J. P., and Vinayachandran, P. N.: Yanai waves in the western equatorial Indian
1915 Ocean. J. Geophys. Res.: Oceans, 118, 1556–1570. https://doi.org/0.1002/jgrc.20121, 2013.

1916 Chatterjee, A., Shankar, D., McCreary, J. P., Vinayachandran, P. N., and Mukherjee, A.: Dynamics of Andaman Sea
1917 circulation and its role in connecting the equatorial Indian Ocean to the Bay of Bengal, J. Geophys. Res., 122:1–19, doi:
1918 10.1002/2016JC012300, 2017.

1919 Chatterjee, A., Shankar, D., Shenoi, S. S. C., Reddy, G. V., Michael, G. S., Ravichandran, M., Gopalkrishana, V. V., Rama
1920 Rao, E. P., Udaya Bhaskar, T. V. S., and Sanjeevan, V. N.: A new atlas of temperature and salinity for the North Indian
1921 Ocean, J. Earth Syst. Sci., 121, 559–593. doi:10.1007/s12040-012-0191-9, 2012.

1922 Chaudhuri, A., Shankar, D., Aparna, S. G., Amol, P., Fernando, V., Kankonkar, A., Michael, G. S., Satelkar, N. P., Khalap,
1923 S. T., Tari, A. P., Gaonkar, M. G., Ghatkar, S., and Khedekar, R. R.: Observed variability of the West India Coastal Current
1924 on the continental slope from 2009–2018, J. Earth Syst. Sci., 129 , 57, doi:10.1007/s12040-019-1322-3, 2020.

1925 Chavez, F.P. and Messie, M.: A comparison of eastern boundary upwelling ecosystems, Prog. Oceanogr., 83, 80-93, doi:
1926 10.1016/j.pocean.2009.07.032, 2009.

1927 Checkley, D. M., and Barth, J. A.: Patterns and processes in the California Current System. Prog. Oceanogr., 83 , 49–64,
1928 doi:10.1016/j.pocean.2009.07.028, 2009.

1929 Chen, G., Han, W., Shu, Y., Li, Y., Wang, D., and Xie, Q.: The role of Equatorial Undercurrent in sustaining the Eastern
1930 Indian Ocean upwelling, Geophys. Res. Lett., 43(12), 6444–6451. https://doi.org/10.1002/2016GL069433, 2016.

1931 Chen, G., Wang, D., and Hou, Y.: The features and interannual variability mechanism of mesoscale eddies in the Bay of
1932 Bengal, Cont. Shelf. Res., 47, 178–185, doi:10.1016/j.csr.2012.07.011, 2012.

1933 Cheng, G., Han, W., Li, Y., and Wang, D.: Interannual variability of equatorial eastern Indian Ocean upwelling: Local
1934 versus remote forcing, J. Phys. Oceanogr., 46, 789-807, doi:10.1175/JPO-D-15-0117.1, 2016.

https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-2020-486
Preprint. Discussion started: 9 February 2021

1935 Cheng, X., Xie, S.-P., McCreary, J. P., Qi, Y., and Du, Y.: Intraseasonal variability of sea surface height over the Bay of
1936 Bengal, J. Geophys. Res., 118, 1–15, doi: 10.1002/jgrc.20075, 2013.

1937 Clarke, A. J., and X. Liu.: Interannual sea level in the northern and eastern Indian ocean, J. Phys. Oceanogr., 24, 1224–1235,
1938 doi: 10.1017/1520-0485, 1994.

1939 Collins, M.: Upwelling on the southeast Madagascan shelf: frequency, extent, and driving mechanisms. MSc thesis, Nelson
1940 Mandela University, Port Elizabeth, South Africa, 126pp, 2020.

1941 Cook, J., Cook, J. R., and Beaglehole, J. C.: The Journals of Captain Cook, Penguin UK, 1999.

1942 Cossa, O., Pous, S., Penven, P., Capet, X., and Reason, C. J. C.: Modelling cyclonic eddies in the Delagoa Bight region,
1943 Cont. Shelf. Res., 119, 14-29, doi:10.1016/j.csr.2016.03.006, 2016.

1944 Cox, M. D.: A numerical study of Somali Current eddies. Journal of Physical Oceanography, 9(2), 311–326,
1945 https://doi.org/10.1175/1520-0485(1979)009%3C0311:ANSOSC%3E2.0.CO;2, 1979.

1946 Cresswell, G. R., and Golding, T.: Observations of a south-flowing current in the southeastern Indian Ocean, Deep Sea Res.
1947 Part I Oceanogr. Res. Pap., 27(6), 449-466, doi:10.1016/0198-0149(80)90055-2, 1980.

1948 Cresswell, G., and Peterson, J.: The Leeuwin Current south of Western Australia, Mar. Freshw. Res., 44(2), 285-303,
1949 doi:10.1071/MF9930285, 1993.

1950 Cresswell, G., Boland, F., Peterson, J., and Wells, G.: Continental shelf currents near the Abrolhos Islands, Western
1951 Australia, Mar. Freshw. Res., 40(2), 113-128, doi:10.1071/MF9890113, 1989.

1952 Cutler, A. N., and Swallow, J. C.: Surface currents of the Indian Ocean (to 25S, 100E). Technical Report 187 (8 pp. and 36
1953 charts). Brachnell: Meteorological Office, UK Institute of Oceanographic Science, 1984.

1954 Darwin, C.: Journal of Researches Into the Natural History and Geology of the Countries Visited During the Voyage of
1955 HMS 'Beagle' Round the World: Under the Command of Capt. Fitz Roy, R.N, 5th ed., London: Ward, Lock and co., 1889.

1956 Das, U., Vinayachandran, P. N., and Behara, A. : Formation of the southern Bay of Bengal cold pool, Climate Dynamics,
1957 47(5–6), 2009–2023, https://doi.org/10.1007/s00382-015-2947-9, 2016.

1958 De Ruijter, W.P.M., Ridderinkhof, H., Lutjeharms, J.R.E., Schouten, M.W., and Veth, C.: Observations Gomesof the flow
1959 in the Mozambique Channel. Geophys. Res. Lett., 29, 10, 1502, doi:10.1029/2001GL013714, 2002.

1960 de Vos, A., Pattiaratchi, C. B., and Wijeratne, E. M. S.: Surface circulation and upwelling patterns around Sri Lanka,
1961 Biogeosciences, 11, 5909–5930, https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-11-5909-2014, 2014.

1962 deCastro, M., Sousa, M. C., Santos, F., Dias, J. M., and Gómez-Gesteira, M: How will somali coastal upwelling evolve
1963 under future warming scenarios? Sci. Rep. 6, https://doi.org/10.1038/srep30137, 2016. not cited in text.

1964 Delman, A. S., McClean, J. L., Sprintall, J., Talley, L. D., and Bryan, F. O.: Process-specific contributions to anomalous
1965 Java mixed layer cooling during positive IOD events, J. Geophys. Res. Oceans, 123, 4153–4176,
1966 doi:/10.1029/2017JC013749, 2018.

1967 Delman, A. S., Sprintall, J., McClean, J. L., and Talley, L. D.: Anomalous Java cooling at the initiation of positive Indian
1968 Ocean Dipole events, J. Geophys. Res. Oceans, 121, 5805–5824, doi:10.1002/2016JC011635, 2016.

1969 Deutsch, C., Sarmiento, J. L., Sigman, D. M., Gruber, N., and Dunne, J. P.: Spatial coupling of nitrogen inputs and losses
1970 in the ocean, Nature, 445(7124), 163–167, doi: 10.1038/nature05392, 2007.

1971 Dilmahamod, A. F., Hermes, J. C., and Reason, C. J. C. : Chlorophyll-a variability in the Seychelles–Chagos Thermocline
1972 Ridge: Analysis of a coupled biophysical model. Journal of Marine Systems, 154, 220–232.
1973 https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jmarsys.2015.10.011, 2016.

1974 Dilmahamod, A. F., Penven, P., Aguiar-González, B., Reason, C. J. C., and Hermes, J. C.: A new definition of the South-
1975 East Madagascar Bloom and analysis of its variability. J. Geophys. Res. : Oceans, 124, doi:10.1029/2018JC014582, 2019.

1976 DiMarco, S.F., Chapman, P., and Nowlin, W.D. Jr.: Satellite observations of upwelling on the continental shelf south of
1977 Madagascar. Geophys. Res. Lett., 27, 24, 3965-3968, doi:10.1016/j.dsr2.2013.10.021, 2000.

1978 Domingues, C. M., Maltrud, M. E., Wijffels, S. E., Church, J. A., and Tomczak, M.: Simulated Lagrangian pathways
1979 between the Leeuwin Current System and the upper-ocean circulation of the southeast Indian Ocean, Deep Sea Res. Part II:
1980 Top. Stud. Oceanogr., 54(8-10), 797-817, doi:10.1016/j.dsr2.2006.10.003, 2007.

1981 Dong, C., McWilliams, J., Liu, Y. And Chen, D.: Global heat and salt transports by eddy movement, *Nat Commun.,* 5**,** 3294,
1982 https://doi.org/10.1038/ncomms4294, 2014.

1983 Donners, J., Drijfhout, S. S.: The Lagrangian view of South Atlantic interocean exchange in a global ocean model compared
1984 with inverse model results., J. Phys. Oceanogr. 34, 1019–1035, https://doi.org/10.1175/1520-
1985 0485(2004)034%3C1019:TLVOSA%3E2.0.CO;2, 2004.

1986 Du, Y., Qu, T., Meyers, and Meyers, G.: Interannual variability of sea surface temperature off Java and Sumatra in a global
1987 GCM, J. Climate, 21, 2451-2465, doi:10.1175/2007JCLI1753.1, 2008.

1988 Du, Y., Qu, T., Meyers, G., Masumoto, Y., and Sasaki, H.: Seasonal heat budget in the mixed layer of the southeastern
1989 tropical Indian Ocean in a high-resolution ocean general circulation model, J. Geophys. Res., 110, C04012,
1990 doi:10.1029/2004JC002845, 2005.

1991 Dufois, F., Hardman-Mountford, N. J., Greenwood, J., Richardson, A. J., Feng, M., Herbette, S., and Matear, R.: Impact of
1992 eddies on surface chlorophyll in the South Indian Ocean, J. Geophys. Res. Oceans, 119(11), 8061-8077,
1993 doi:10.1002/2014jc010164, 2014.

1994 Düing, W., Molinari, R., and Swallow, J.: Somali Current: Evolution of surface flow. Science, 209(4456), 588–590,
1995 10.1126/science.209.4456.588-a, 1980.

1996 Ehlert, C., Frank, M., Haley, B. A., Böniger, U., De Deckker, P., and Gingele, F. X. : Current transport versus continental
1997 inputs in the eastern Indian Ocean: Radiogenic isotope signatures of clay size sediments, Geochem. Geophys. Geosyst., 12,
1998 Q06017, doi:10.1029/2011GC003544, 2011.

1999 Ekman, V. W. : On the influence of the Earth's rotation on ocean currents, Arch. Math. Astron. Phys., 2, 1-52, 1905.

2000 Elipot, S., and Beal, L. M.: *Characteristics, Energetics, and Origins of Agulhas Current Meanders and their Limited*
2001 *Influence on Ring Shedding*, J. Phys. Oceanogr., 45, 2294-2314, doi:10.1175/JPO-D-14-0254.1, 2015.

2002 Evans, R. H., and Brown, O. B.: Propagation of thermal fronts in the Somali Current system, Deep-Sea Research, 28A, 521–
2003 527, https://doi.org/10.1016/0198-0149(81)90142-4, 1981.

2004 Falkowski, P., Ziemann, D., Kolber, Z. Beinfang, P. K.:Role of eddy pumping in enhancing primary production in the ocean,
2005 *Nature,* 352**,** 55–58, https://doi.org/10.1038/352055a0, 1991.

2006 Feng, M., Majewski, L. J., Fandry, C. B., and Waite, A. M: Characteristics of two counter-rotating eddies in the Leeuwin
2007 Current system off the Western Australian coast, Deep Sea Res. Part II: Top. Stud. Oceanogr., 54(8), 961-980.
2008 doi:10.1016/j.dsr2.2006.11.022, 2007.

2009 Feng, M., Meyers, G., Pearce, A., and Wijffels, S.: Annual and interannual variations of the Leeuwin Current at 32°S, J.
2010 Geophys. Res. Oceans, 108(C11). doi:10.1029/2002jc001763, 2003.

2011 Feng, M., Slawinski, D., Beckley, L. E., and Keesing, J. K.: Retention and dispersal of shelf waters influenced by interactions
2012 of ocean boundary current and coastal geography, Mar. Freshw. Res., 61(11), 1259-1267, doi:10.1071/MF09275, 2010.

https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-2020-486
Preprint. Discussion started: 9 February 2021

Feng, M., Waite, A., and Thompson, P.: Climate variability and ocean production in the Leeuwin Current system off the west coast of Western Australia, J R Soc West Aus, 92, 67-82, 2009.

Findlater, J.: A major low-level air current near the Indian Ocean during the northern summer. Quarterly Journal of the Royal Meteorological Society, 95(404), 362–380, https://doi.org/10.1002/qj.49709540409, 1969.

Fischer, A. S., Weller, R. A., Rudnick, D. L., Eriksen, C. C., Lee, C. M., Brink, K. H., Fox, C. A., and Leben, R. R.: Mesoscale eddies, coastal upwelling, and the upper-ocean heat budget in the Arabian Sea. Deep-Sea Res. II 49, 2231–2264, https://doi.org/10.1016/S0967-0645(02)00036-X, 2002.

Fischer, J., F. Schott, and Stramma, L.: Currents and transports of the Great Whirl-Socotra Gyre system during the summer monsoon, August 1993, J. Geophys. Res., 101, 3573 – 3587, https://doi.org/10.1029/95JC03617, 1996.

Flagg, C. N., and Kim, H. S.: Upper ocean currents in the northern Arabian Sea from shipboard ADCP measurements collected during the 1994–1996 US JGOFS and ONR programs. Deep-Sea Research II, 45, 1917–1959, https://doi.org/10.1016/S0967-0645(98)00059-9, 1998.

Fletcher, W., Tregonning, R., and Sant, G.: Interseasonal variation in the transport of pilchard eggs and larvae off southern Western Australia, Mar. Ecol. Prog. Ser., 111(3), 209-224, doi:10.3354/meps111209, 1994.

Foltz, G. R., Vialard, J., Praveen Kumar, B., and McPhaden, M. J. : Seasonal Mixed Layer Heat Balance of the Southwestern Tropical Indian Ocean*. Journal of Climate, 23(4), 947–965. https://doi.org/10.1175/2009JCLI3268.1, 2010.

Furnas, M.: Intra-seasonal and inter-annual variations in phytoplankton biomass, primary production and bacterial production at North West Cape, Western Australia: Links to the 1997–1998 El Niño event, Cont Shelf Res., 27(7), 958-980, doi:10.1016/j.csr.2007.01.002, 2007.

Fye, P.M.: The International Indian Ocean Expedition, The Distinguished Lecture Series 1964-1965, sponsored by Science Bureau, Washington Board of Trade, presented at Georgetown University, 27 January 1965, doi:10.1575/1912/5872, 1965.

Gadgil, S., Vinayachandran, P. N., Francis, P. A., and Gadgil, S.: Extremes of the Indian summer monsoon rainfall, ENSO and equatorial Indian Ocean oscillation, Geophys. Res. Lett., 31(12), L12213, https://doi.org/10.1029/2004GL019733, 2004.

Gandhi, N., Singh, A., Prakash, S., Ramesh, R., Raman, M., Sheshshayee, M., and Shetye, S.: First direct measurements of N_2 fixation during a Trichodesmium bloom in the eastern Arabian Sea, Glob. Biogeochem. Cycles, 25, GB4014, doi:10.1029/2010GB003970, 2011.

https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-2020-486
Preprint. Discussion started: 9 February 2021

2040 Gandhi,N., Prakash, S., Ramesh, R., Kumar,S.: Nitrogen uptake rates and new production in the Indian Ocean, Indian
2041 Journal of Marine Science, 39(3), 362-368, 2010.

2042 Gao, C., Fu, M., Song, H., Wang, L., Wei, Q., Sun, P., Liu, L. and Zhang, X.: Phytoplankton pigment pattern in the
2043 subsurface chlorophyll maximum in the South Java coastal upwelling system, Indonesia, Acta Oceanol. Sin., 37, 97-106,
2044 doi: 10.1007/s13131-018-1342-x, 2018.

2045 Gaughan, D., Fletcher, W., and White, K.: Growth rate of larval Sardinops sagax from ecosystems with different levels of
2046 productivity, Mar. Biol, 139(5), 831-837, doi:10.1007/s002270100637, 2001a.

2047 Gaughan, D., White, K., and Fletcher, W.: The links between functionally distinct adult assemblages of Sardinops sagax:
2048 larval advection across management boundaries, ICES J. Mar. Sci., 58(3), 597-606, doi:10.1006/jmsc.2001.1061, 2001b.

2049 Gauns, M., Madhupratap, M., Ramaiah, N., Jyothibabu, R., Fernandes, V., Paul, J. T., Prasanna Kumar, S.: Comparative
2050 accounts of biological productivity characteristics and estimates of carbon fluxes in the Arabian Sea and the Bay of Bengal,
2051 Deep Sea Research Part II: Topical Stud. Oceanogr. 52:2003-2017, Doi: 10.1016/j.dsr2.2005.05.009, 2005.

2052 Gentilli, J.: Thermal anomalies in the eastern Indian Ocean, Nat. Phys. Sci., 238(84), 93-95, doi:10.1038/physci238093a0,
2053 1972.

2054 Gersbach, G. H., Pattiaratchi, C. B., Ivey, G. N., and Cresswell, G. R.: Upwelling on the south-west coast of Australia—
2055 source of the Capes Current?, Cont Shelf Res., 19(3), 363-400, doi:10.1016/S0278-4343(98)00088-0, 1999.

2056 Godfrey, J., and Ridgway, K.: The large-scale environment of the poleward-flowing Leeuwin Current, Western Australia:
2057 longshore steric height gradients, wind stresses and geostrophic flow, J. Phys. Oceanogr., 15(5), 481-495, doi:10.1175/1520-
2058 0485(1985)015<0481:TLSEOT>2.0.CO;2, 1985.

2059 Goes, J.I., Thoppil, P.G., Gomes, H.D.,and Fasullo, J.T.: Warming of the Eurasian landmass is making the Arabian Sea
2060 more productive, Science,308:545-547, 2005.

2061 Gomes, H. R., Goes, J. I., and Saino, T. : Influence of physical processes and freshwater discharge on the seasonality of
2062 phytoplankton regime in the Bay of Bengal, Cont. Shelf Res., 20, 313– 330, Doi: 10.1016/S0278-4343(99)00072-2, 2000.

2063 Gomes, H.D.R., Goes, J. I., Matondkar, S. P., Buskey, E. J., Basu, S., Parab, S., and Thoppil, P.: Massive outbreaks of
2064 Noctiluca scintillans blooms in the Arabian Sea due to spread of hypoxia, Nat. Commun., 5, 4862, doi:
2065 10.1038/ncomms5862, 2014.

https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-2020-486
Preprint. Discussion started: 9 February 2021

2066 Gomes, H.D.R., Goes, J. I., Matondkar, S. P., Parab, S. G., Al-Azri, A. R., and Thoppil, P. G.: Blooms of Noctiluca miliaris
2067 in the Arabian Sea—An in situ and satellite study, Deep Sea Res. Part I Oceanogr., 55(6), 751–765,
2068 doi:10.1016/j.dsr.2008.03.003, 2008.

2069 Gopalakrishna, V. V., and Sastry, J. S.: Hydrography of the western Bay of Bengal during SW monsoon. Indian J. Mar. Sci.,
2070 14:62–65, 1985.

2071 Gopalan, A. K. S., Gopalakrishna, V. V., Ali, M. M, and Sharma, R.: Detection of BoB eddies from TOPEX and sea truth
2072 observations. J. Mar. Res., 58:721–734, 2000.

2073 Goschen, W. S., Bornman, T. G., Deyzel, S., and Schumann, E. H.: Coastal upwelling on the far eastern Agulhas Bank
2074 associated with large meanders in the Agulhas Current, Cont. Shelf Res., 101: 34-46, 2015.

2075 Griffin, D. A., Wilkin, J. L., Chubb, C. F., Pearce, A. F., and Caputi, N.: Ocean currents and the larval phase of Australian
2076 western rock lobster, Panulirus cygnus. Mar. Freshw. Res., 52(8), 1187-1199, doi:10.1071/MF01181, 2001.

2077 Griffiths, C. L., Robinson, T. B., Lange, L., Mead, A.: Marine biodiversity in South Africa: an evaluation of current states
2078 of knowledge, Plos one, 5(8):e12008. doi: 10.1371/journal.pone.0012008, 2010.

2079 Grumet, N. S., Abram,N. J., Beck, J. W., Dunbar,R. B., Gagan, M. K., Guilderson, T. P., Hantoro, W. S. and Suwargadi,
2080 B. W.: Coral radiocarbon records of Indian Ocean water mass mixing and wind-induced upwelling along the coast of
2081 Sumatra, Indonesia, J. Geophys. Res., 109, C05003, doi:10.1029/2003JC002087, 2004.

2082 Guastella, L. A., Roberts, M.J. : Dynamics and role of the Durban cyclonic eddy in the KwaZulu-Natal Bight ecosystem,
2083 African Journal of Marine Science, 38:sup1, S23-S42, DOI: 10.2989/1814232X.2016.1159982, 2016.

2084 Gupta, G., Sudheesh, V., Sudharma, K., Saravanane, N., Dhanya, V., Dhanya, K., Lakshmi, G., Sudhakar, M., and Naqvi,
2085 S.: Evolution to decay of upwelling and associated biogeochemistry over the southeastern Arabian Sea shelf, J. Geophys.
2086 Res. Biogeosci., 121(1), 159–175, doi: 10.1002/2015JG003163, 2016.

2087 Halm, H., Lam, P., Ferdelman, T.G., Lavik, G., Dittmar, T., Laroche, J., D'Hondt, S., Kuypers, M.M.: Heterotrophic
2088 organisms dominate nitrogen fixation in the South Pacific Gyre, ISME J., 6(6), 1238-49, doi:10.1038/ismej.2011.182, 2012.

2089 Halo, I., Backeberg, B., Penven, P., Ansorge, I., Reason, C., and Ullgren, J.E.: Eddy properties in the Mozambique Channel:
2090 A comparison between observations and two numerical ocean circulation models. Deep-Sea Research II, 100, 38–53,
2091 doi:10.1016/j.dsr2.2013.10.015, 2014.

2092 Halo, I., Sagero, P., Manyilizu, M., and Shigalla M.: Biophysical modelling of the coastal upwelling variability and
2093 circulation along the Tanzanian and Kenyan coasts. Western Indian Ocean Journal of Marine Science (in review).

https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-2020-486
Preprint. Discussion started: 9 February 2021

2094 Han, W., Mccreary, J.P., and Kohler, K.E.: Influence of Precipitation minus evaporation and Bay of Bengal rivers on
2095 dynamics, thermodynamics and mixed-layer physics in the upper Indian Ocean, J. Geophys Res., 106, 6895–6916,
2096 doi:10.1029/2000JC000403, 2001.

2097 Hanson, C. E., Pattiaratchi, C. B., and Waite, A. M.: Seasonal production regimes off south-western Australia: influence of
2098 the Capes and Leeuwin Currents on phytoplankton dynamics, Mar. Freshw. Res., 56(7), 1011-1026, doi:10.1071/MF04288,
2099 2005.

2100 Hanson, C. E., Pesant, S., Waite, A. M., and Pattiaratchi, C. B.: Assessing the magnitude and significance of deep
2101 chlorophyll maxima of the coastal eastern Indian Ocean, Deep Sea Res. Part II: Top. Stud. Oceanogr., 54(8-10), 884-901,
2102 doi:10.1016/j.dsr2.2006.08.021, 2007a.

2103 Hanson, C. E., Waite, A. M., Thompson, P. A., and Pattiaratchi, C. B.: Phytoplankton community structure and nitrogen
2104 nutrition in Leeuwin Current and coastal waters off the Gascoyne region of Western Australia, Deep Sea Res. Part II: Top.
2105 Stud. Oceanogr., 54(8-10), 902-924, doi:10.1016/j.dsr2.2006.10.002, 2007b.

2106 Hanson, C., and McKinnon, A.: Pelagic ecology of the Ningaloo region, Western Australia: influence of the Leeuwin
2107 Current, J R Soc West Aus, 92, 129-138, 2009.

2108 T.F.W.Harris, T. F. W., and ' van Foreest, D.: The Agulhas Current in March 1969, Deep Sea Res., 25(6), 549-550,
2109 https://doi.org/10.1016/0146-6291(78)90643-4, 1978.

2110 Hastenrath, S. and Lamb, P. J.: Climatic Atlas of the Indian Ocean, Part I: Surface Climate and Atmospheric Circulation,
2111 University of Wisconsin Press, 1979.

2112 Haugen, V. E., Johannessen, O. M., and Evensen, G.: Mesoscale modeling study of the oceanographic conditions off the
2113 southwest coast of India, J. Earth Syst. Sci., 111 , 321–337, doi:10.1007/BF02701978, 2002.

2114 Heileman, S. and Scott, L.E.P.: The Somali coastal current large marine ecosystem. In: Sherman, K., Hempel, G. (Eds.),
2115 The UNEP Large Marine Ecosystem Report: A perspective on changing conditions in LMEs of the World's regional seas.
2116 UNEP, United States, 2008.

2117 Heip C.H.R., Hemminga, M.A., and de Bie, M.J.M. (Eds), Monsoons and Coastal Ecosystems in Kenya. Cruise reports
2118 Netherlands Indian Ocean Programme, 5, National Museum of Natural History, Leiden, Netherlands, 122 pp, 1995.

2119 Helly, J. J., and Levi, L. A.: Global distribution of naturally occurring marine hypoxia on continental margins, *Deep Sea*
2120 *Res., Part I*, *51*,1159–1168, 2004.

2121 Hermes, J. C., & Reason, C. J. C. : Annual cycle of the South Indian Ocean (Seychelles-Chagos) thermocline ridge in a
2122 regional ocean model, J. Geophys. Res., 113(C4), C04035. https://doi.org/10.1029/2007JC004363, 2008.

https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-2020-486
Preprint. Discussion started: 9 February 2021

2123 Hitchcock, G., and Olson, D.: NE and SW monsoon conditions along the Somali coast during 1987. In B. N. Desai (Ed.),
2124 Oceanography of the Indian Ocean. New Delhi: Oxford & IBH, 1992.

2125 Hitchcock, G.L., Key, E., and Masters, J.: The fate of upwelled waters in the Great Whirl, August 1995. Deep-Sea Res. II
2126 47, 1605–1621, 2000.

2127 Ho, C.-R., Zheng, Q., and Kuo, N.-J.: SeaWiFs observations of upwelling south of Madagascar: long-term variability and
2128 interaction with East Madagascar Current. Deep-Sea Res. II Top. Stud. Oceanogr., 51, 1, 59–67,
2129 doi:10.1016/j.dsr2.2003.05.001, 2004.

2130 Holliday, D., Beckley, L. E., and Olivar, M. P.: Incorporation of larval fishes into a developing anti-cyclonic eddy of the
2131 Leeuwin Current off south-western Australia, J. Plankton Res., 33(11), 1696-1708, doi:10.1093/plankt/fbr064, 2011.

2132 Holliday, D., Beckley, L. E., Millar, N., Olivar, M. P., Slawinski, D., Feng, M., and Thompson, P. A.: Larval fish
2133 assemblages and particle back-tracking define latitudinal and cross-shelf variability in an eastern Indian Ocean boundary
2134 current, Mar. Ecol. Prog. Ser., 460, 127-144, doi:10.3354/meps09730, 2012.

2135 Holloway, P. E., and Nye, H.: Leeuwin Current and wind distributions on the southern part of the Australian North West
2136 Shelf between January 1982 and July 1983, Australian Journal of Mar. Freshw. Res., 36(2), 123-137,
2137 doi:10.1071/MF9850123, 1985.

2138 Hood, R. R., Beckley, L. E., and Wiggert, J. D.: Biogeochemical and ecological impacts of boundary currents in the Indian
2139 Ocean, Prog. Oceanogr., 156, 290-325, doi:10.1016/j.pocean.2017.04.011, 2017.

2140 Hood, R.R., Bange, H.W., Beal, L., Beckley, L.E., Burkill, P., Cowie, G.L., D'Adamo, N., Ganssen, G., Hendon, H., Hermes,
2141 J., Honda, M., McPhaden, M., Roberts, M., Singh, S., Urban, E., Yu, W., 2015. Science Plan of the Second International
2142 Indian Ocean Expedition (IIOE-2): A Basin-Wide Research Program. Scientific Committee on Oceanic Research, Newark,
2143 Delaware, USA.

2144 Horii, T., Hase, H., Ueki, I., and Masumoto, Y.: Oceanic precondition and evolution of the 2006 Indian Ocean dipole,
2145 Geophys. Res. Lett., 35, L03607, doi:10.1029/2007GL032464, 2008.

2146 Horii, T., Ueki, I., and Ando, K.: Coastal upwelling events along the southern coast of Java during the 2008 positive Indian
2147 Ocean Dipole, J. Oceanogr., 74, 499–508, doi:10.1007/s10872-018-0475-z, 2018.

2148 Horii, T., Ueki, I., Syamsudin, F., Sofian, I., and Ando, K.: Intraseasonal coastal upwelling signal along the southern coast
2149 of Java observed using Indonesian tidal station data, J. Geophys. Res., 121, 2690-2708, doi: 10.1002/2015JC010886, 2016.

https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-2020-486
Preprint. Discussion started: 9 February 2021

2150 Huggett, J.A.: Mesoscale distribution and community composition of zooplankton in the Mozambique Channel. Deep-Sea
2151 Research II, 100, 119–135, doi: 10.1016/j.dsr2.2013.10.021, 2014.

2152 Hutchings, L. Beckley, L. L. E., , Griffiths, M. H., Roberts, M. J., Sundby, S., van der Lingen, C. : Spawning on the edge:
2153 spawning grounds and nursery areas around the southern African coastline. Marine and Freshwater Research, 53: 307–318,
2154 doi:10.1071/MF01147, 2002.

2155 Hutchings, L., [van der Lingen], C., Shannon, L., Crawford, R., Verheye, H., Bartholomae, C., [van der Plas], A., Louw,
2156 D., Kreiner, A., Ostrowski, M., Fidel, Q., Barlow, R., Lamont, T., Coetzee, J., Shillington, F., Veitch, J., Currie, J., and
2157 Monteiro, P.: The Benguela Current: An ecosystem of four components, Prog. Oceanogr., 83 , 15–32,
2158 doi:10.1016/j.pocean.2009.07.046, 2009.

2159 IMR.: Cruise Report No. 1 of R/V Dr Fridtjof Nansen. Joint NORAD/Mozambique/FAO Project to investigate the fish
2160 resources off the coast of Mozambique. Institute of Marine Research, Bergen, Norway, 1977a.

2161 IMR.: Cruise Report No. 2 of R/V Dr Fridtjof Nansen. Joint NORAD/Mozambique/FAO Project to investigate the fish
2162 resources off the coast of Mozambique, October–December 1977. Institute of Marine Research, Bergen, Norway, 1978a.

2163 IMR.: Cruise Report No. 3 of R/V Dr Fridtjof Nansen. Joint NORAD/Mozambique/FAO Project to investigate the fish
2164 resources off the coast of Mozambique, January–March 1978. Institute of Marine Research, Bergen, Norway, 1978b.

2165 IMR.: Cruise Report No. 4 of R/V Dr Fridtjof Nansen. Joint NORAD/Mozambique/FAO Project to investigate the fish
2166 resources off the coast of Mozambique, April–June 1978. Institute of Marine Research, Bergen, Norway, 1978c.

2167 IMR.: Fisheries resources survey, Madagascar. Cruise Report R/V Dr Fridtjof Nansen. 16–28 June 1983. Institute of Marine
2168 Research, Bergen, Norway, 1983a.

2169 Iskandar, I., Rao, S. A., and Tozuka, T.: Chlorophyll-a bloom along the southern coasts of Java and Sumatra during 2006,
2170 Int. J. Remote Sens., 30, 663-671, doi:10.1080/01431160802372309, 2009.

2171 Iskandar, I., Sari, Q. W, Setiabudidaya, D., Yustian I., and Monger B.: The distribution and variability of chlorophyll-a
2172 bloom in the southeastern tropical Indian Ocean using Empirical Orthogonal Function analysis, Biodiversitas, 18, 1546-
2173 1555, doi: 10.13057/biodiv/d180433, 2017.

2174 Iskandar, I., Tozuka, T., Sasaki, H., Masumoto, Y., and Yamagata, T.: Intraseasonal variations of surface and subsurface
2175 currents off Java as simulated in a high-resolution ocean general circulation model, J. Geophys. Res., 111, C12015,
2176 doi:10.1029/2006JC003486, 2006.

2177 Ittekkot, V., Nair,R.R., Honjo, S. et al. (1991), Enhanced particle fluxes in the Bay of Bengal induced by injection of
2178 freshwater, Nature, 351, 385– 387, Doi: 10.1038/351385a0

https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-2020-486
Preprint. Discussion started: 9 February 2021

2179 Iversen, S.: Preliminary Cruise Report R/V Dr. Fridtjof Nansen. Survey of the abundance and distribution of fish resources
2180 off Kenya, 2–8 May 1983. Institute of Marine Research, Bergen, Norway, 1983.

2181 Izumo, T., Montegut, C. D., Luo, J. J. , Behera, S. K., Masson, S., and Yamagata, T.: The role of the western Arabian Sea
2182 upwelling in Indian monsoon rainfall variability, J. Clim., 21(21), 5603 – 5623, doi:10.1175/2008JCLI2158.1, 2008.

2183 Jackson, J. M., Rainville, L., Roberts, M. J. , McQuaid, C. D., and Lutjeharms, J. R. E. : Mesoscale bio-physical interactions
2184 between the Agulhas Current and the Agulhas Bank, South Africa. Cont. Shelf Res., 49, 10–24, doi:10.1016/
2185 j.csr.2012.09.005, 2012.

2186 Jacobs, Z. L., Jebri, F., Raitsos, D. E., Popova, E., Srokosz, M., Painter, S. C., Nencioli, F., Roberts, M., Kamau, J., Palmer,
2187 M., and Wihsgott, J.: Shelf-break upwelling and productivity over the North Kenya Banks: The importance of large-scale
2188 ocean dynamics. J. Geophys. Res. : Oceans, 125, e2019JC015519. https://doi.org/10.1029/2019JC015519, 2020.

2189 Jochum, J. and Murtugudde, R.: Internal variability of Indian Ocean SST. J. Climate, 18, 3726–3738,
2190 https://doi.org/10.1175/JCLI3488.1, 2005.

2191 Johannes, R., Pearce, A., Wiebe, W., Crossland, C., Rimmer, D., Smith, D., and Manning, C.: Nutrient characteristics of
2192 well-mixed coastal waters off Perth, Western Australia, Estuar. Coast. Shelf Sci., 39(3), 273-285,
2193 doi:10.1006/ecss.1994.1064, 1994.

2194 Johannessen, O. M., Subbaraju, G. V., and Blindheim, J.: Seasonal variations of the oceanographic conditions off the
2195 southwest coast of India during 1971-1975. Fisk Dir Skr Ser Hav Unders, 18 , 247–261, 1981.

2196 Johnsen, E., Krakstad, J., Ostrowski, M., Serigstad, B., Strømme, T., Alvheim, O., Olsen, M., Zaera, D., André, E., Dias,
2197 N., Sousa, L., Sousa, B., Malauene, B., and Abdula, S.: Surveys of the living marine resources of Mozambique: Ecosystem
2198 survey and special studies. 27 September–21 December 2007. Report No. 8/2007–2007409. Institute of Marine Research,
2199 Bergen, Norway, 2007.

2200 Johnson, K.S., Riser, S.C., Ravichandran, M. : Oxygen variability controls denitrification in the bay of Bengal oxygen
2201 minimum zone, Geophys Res Lett.,1–8, doi:10.1029/2018GL079881, 2019.

2202 Jorge da Silva, A., Mubango, A., and Sætre, R.: Information on oceanographic cruises in the Mozambique Channel. Revista
2203 de Investigação Pesquira, 2, Instituto de Desenvolvimento Pesqueiro, Maputo, República Popular de Moçambique, 89 pp,
2204 1981.

2205 Jyothibabu, R., Vinayachandran, P. N., Madhu, N. V., Robin, R. S., Karnan, C., Jagadeesan, L., & Anjusha, A. :
2206 Phytoplankton size structure in the southern Bay of Bengal modified by the Summer Monsoon Current and associated
2207 eddies: Implications on the vertical biogenic flux, Journal of Marine Systems, 143, 98–119.
2208 https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jmarsys.2014.10.018, 2015.

2209 Kaehler, S., Gammelsrød, T., Hill, J., Ternon, J.-F., Cotel, P., Potier, M., Huggett, J., Miggel, A., Pillay, K., Dyer, B.,
2210 Backeberg, B., Langa, A., Malaune, B., Benivary, D., Morris, T., O'Reilly, B. and Olsen, M.: 2008 ASCLME Survey No 4.

2211 Preliminary Cruise Report No 8/2008. 28 November–17 December 2008. Institute of Marine Research, Bergen, Norway,
2212 2008.

2213 Kämpf, J. and Kavi, A.: SST variability in the eastern intertropical Indian Ocean – On the search for trigger mechanisms of
2214 IOD events, Deep Sea Res. Part II Top. Stud. Oceanogr., 166, 64-74, doi:10.1016/j.dsr2.2018.11.010, 2019.

2215 Kanuri, V. V., Rao, G.D., Munnooru,K., Sura, A., Patra, S.,Vinjamuri,R. R., and Karr. R.:Scales and drivers of seasonal
2216 pCO_2 dynamics and net ecosystem exchange along the coastal waters of southeastern Arabian Sea, *Marine poll. Bull.*, *121*(1-
2217 2), 372-380, 2017.

2218 Kawamiya, M.: Mechanism of offshore nutrient supply in the western Arabian Sea. J. Mar. Res. 59, 675–696,
2219 https://doi.org/10.1357/002224001762674890, 2001.

2220 Keen, T.R., Kindle, J.C., and Young, D.K.: The interaction of southwest monsoon upwelling, advection and primary
2221 production in the northwest Arabian Sea. J. Mar. Syst. 13, 61–82, https://doi.org/10.1016/S0924-7963(97)00003-1, 1997.

2222 Kindle, J. C., Arnone, R., and Smedstad, O. M.: On the generation of coastal filaments during the Spring Intermonsoon.
2223 EOS, Transactions of the American Geophysical Union, 83, 37, 2002.

2224 Kolasinski, J., Kaehler, S., and Jaquemet, S.: Distribution and sources of particulate organic matter in a mesoscale eddy
2225 dipole in the Mozambique Channel (south-western Indian Ocean): Insight from C and N stable isotopes. Journal of Marine
2226 Systems, 96–97, 122–131, doi: 10.1016/j.jmarsys.2012.02.015, 2012.

2227 Koné, V., Aumont, O., Lévy, and M., Resplandy, L.: Physical and biogeochemical controls of the phytoplankton seasonal
2228 cycle in the Indian Ocean: a modeling study. In: Indian Ocean Biogeochemical Processes and Ecological Variability.
2229 American Geophysical Union (AGU), 147–166, doi.org/10.1029/2008GM000700.

2230 Koné, V., Lett, C., and Fréon, P.,: Modelling the effect of food availability on recruitment success of Cape anchovy
2231 ichthyoplankton in the southern Benguela upwelling system, African Journal of Marine Science, 35 (2): 151-161, 2013.

2232 Koslow, J.A., Pesant, S., Feng, M., Pearce, A., Fearns, P., Moore, T., Matear, R., Waite, A.: The effect of the Leeuwin
2233 Current on phytoplankton biomass and production off Southwestern Australia, J. Geophys. Res. Oceans, 113(C7),
2234 doi:10.1029/2007JC004102, 2008.

2235 Krakstad, J.-O., Krafft, B., Alvheim, O., Kvalsund, M., Bernardes, I., Chacate, O., Mutombene, R., Filipe, O., Hajy, B.,
2236 Zacarias, L., Zivane, F., Padeira, M., and Varela, D.: Marine Ecosystem Survey of Mozambique. Cruise report Dr Fridtjof
2237 Nansen. 11 November–02 December 2014. Report No. GCP/INT/003/NOR. FAO–NORAD, 2015.

2238 Krakstad, J.-O., Mehl, S., Roman, R., Escobar-Porras, J., Stapley, J., Flynn, B., Olsen, M., and Beck, I.: Cruise Reports Dr
2239 Fridtjof Nansen. East Madagascar Current Ecosystem Survey ASCLME/FAO 2008 Cruise 1, 24 August–1 October 2008.
2240 Institute of Marine Research, Bergen, Norway, 2008.

https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-2020-486
Preprint. Discussion started: 9 February 2021

2241 Kromkamp, J., de Bie, M., Goosen, N., Peene, J., van Rijswijk, P., Sinke, J., and Duineveld, G.C.A.: Primary production by
2242 phytoplankton along the Kenyan coast during the SE monsoon and November intermonsoon 1992, and the occurrence of
2243 *Trichodesmium*. Deep-Sea Res., Part 2, Top. Stud. Oceanogr., 44(6-7), 1195-1212, doi:10.1016/S0967-0645(97)00015-5,
2244 1997.

2245 Krug, M., and Tournadre, J. : Satellite observations of an annual cycle in the Agulhas Current. Geophys. Res. Lett., 39(15),
2246 https://doi.org/10.1029/2012GL052335, 2012.

2247 Krug, M., Swart, S., and Gula, J. : Submesoscale cyclones in the Agulhas current. Geophys. Res. Lett., 44(1), 346–354.
2248 https://doi.org/10.1002/2016GL071006, 2017.

2249 Krug, M., Tournadre, J., and Dufois, F. : Interactions between the Agulhas Current and the eastern margin of the Agulhas
2250 Bank. Cont. Shelf Res., 81, 67–79. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.csr.2014.02.020, 2014.

2251 Kumar, P. K, Singh, A., Ramesh, R., and Nallathambi, T.: N_2 Fixation in the Eastern Arabian Sea: Probable Role of
2252 Heterotrophic Diazotrophs, Mar. Chem., 4, 80, doi:10.3389/fmars.2017.00080, 2017.

2253 Kumar, S. P., Nuncio, M., Ramaiah, N., Sardesai, S., Narvekar, J. ,Veronica, F., and Jane, T. P.: Eddy-mediated biological
2254 productivity in the Bay of Bengal during fall and spring intermonsoons, Deep-Sea Res., Part I, 54, 1619–1640,
2255 doi:10.10.1016/j.dsr.2007.06.002, 2007.

2256 Kumar, S., Ramesh, R., Sardesai, S., Sheshshayee, M.S.: High new production in the Bay of Bengal: possible causes and
2257 implications. Geophys. Res. Lett. 31(L18304), doi:10.1029/2004GL021005, 2004.

2258 Kurian, J., and Vinayachandran, P. N.: Mechanisms of formation of the Arabian Sea mini warm pool in a high-resolution
2259 Ocean General Circulation Model, J. Geophys. Res. Oceans, 112, C05009, doi:10.1029/2006JC003631, 2007.

2260 Kyewalyanga, M.S., Naik, R., Hegde, S., Raman, M., Barlow, R., and Roberts, M.: Phytoplankton biomass and primary
2261 production in Delagoa Bight Mozambique: Application of remote sensing. Estuarine, Coastal and Shelf Science, 74, 429-
2262 436, doi: 10.1016/j.ecss.2007.04.027, 2007.

2263 La Fond, E. C: Sea surface features and internal waves in the sea, Indian J. Meterol. Geophys., 10:415–419,
2264 https://metnet.imd.gov.in/mausamdocs/51047.pdf, 1959.

2265 La Fond, E. C.: Oceanographic studies in the Bay of Bengal, Proc. Indian Acad. Sci., 46, 1–46, doi:10.1007/BF03052445,
2266 1957.

2267 La Fond, E. C.: On the circulation of the surface layers on the east coast of India, Andhra Univ. Mem. Oceanogr., 2, 1–11,
2268 1958.

2269 La Fond, E. C.: On upwelling and sinking off the east coast of India, Andhra Univ. Mem. Oceanogr., 1, 117–121, 1954.

2270 Lakshmi, R. S., Chatterjee, A., Prakash, S., and Mathew, T.: Biophysical Interactions in Driving the Summer Monsoon
2271 Chlorophyll Bloom Off the Somalia Coast, J.Geophys. Res. Oceans, *125*(3), https://doi.org/10.1029/2019JC015549, 2020.

2272 Lamont, T., Barlow, R., Morris, T., and van den Berg, M.: Characterisation of mesoscale features and phytoplankton
2273 variability in the Mozambique Channel. Deep-Sea Res. II 100, 94–105, doi: 10.1016/j.dsr2.2013.10.019, 2014.

2274 Lamont, T., Roberts, M. J., Barlow, R. G., Morris, T., and van den Berg, M. A.: Circulation patterns in the Delagoa Bight,
2275 Mozambique, and the influence of deep ocean eddies. African Journal of Marine Science 2010, 32, 3, 553–562, doi:
2276 10.2989/1814232X.2010.538147, 2010.

2277 Landolfi, A., Koeve, W., Dietze, H., Kähler, P., and Oschlies, A.: A new perspective on environmental controls of marine
2278 nitrogen fixation, Geophys. Res. Lett., 42, 4482–4489, doi:10.1002/2015GL063756, 2015.

2279 Langlois, R., Großkopf, T., Mills, M., Takeda, S., and LaRoche, J.: Widespread distribution and expression of gamma A
2280 (UMB), an uncultured, diazotrophic, γ-proteobacterial nifH phylotype, PLoS One, 10(6),
2281 doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0128912, 2015.

2282 Leber, G. M., and Beal, L. M.: Local water mass modifications by a solitary meander in the A gulhas Current, J. Geophys.
2283 Res. : Oceans, 120(6), 4503–4515. https://doi.org/10.1002/2015JC010863, 2015.

2284 Leber, G. M., Beal, L. M., and Elipot, S.: Wind and Current Forcing Combine to Drive Strong Upwelling in the Agulhas
2285 Current, Journal of Physical Oceanography, 47(1), 123–134. https://doi.org/10.1175/JPO-D-16-0079.1, 2017.

2286 Lee, C. M., Jones, B. H., Brink, K. H., and Fischer, A. S.: The upper-ocean response to monsoonal forcing in the Arabian
2287 Sea: seasonal and spatial variability, Deep-Sea Research II, 47, 1177–1226, https://doi.org/10.1016/S0967-0645(99)00141-
2288 1, 2000.

2289 Lee, C., Murray, D.W., Barber, R.T., Buesseler, K. O., Dymond, J., Hedges, J. I., Honjo, S., Manganini, S.J., Marra, J.,
2290 Mosers, C., Peterson, M.L., Prell, W.L., Wakeham, S. G. : Particulate organic carbon fluxes: results from the U.S. JGOFS
2291 Arabian Sea Process Study, Deep-Sea Research II 45, 2489—2501, Doi: 10.1016/S0967-0645(98)00079-4, 1998.

2292 Lee, T. : Decadal weakening of the shallow overturning circulation in the South Indian Ocean. Geophys. Res. Lett., 31(18),
2293 L18305. https://doi.org/10.1029/2004GL020884, 2004

2294 Leetmaa, A., Quadfasel, D. R., and Wilson, D.: Development of the flow field during the onset of the Somali current, 1979,
2295 Journal of Physical Oceanography, 12, 1325–1342, doi:10.1175/1520-0485(1982)012<1325:DOTFFD>2.0.CO;2, 1982.

2296 Lenanton, R., Caputi, N., Kangas, M., and Craine, M.: The ongoing influence of the Leeuwin Current on economically
2297 important fish and invertebrates off temperate Western Australia - has it changed?, J R Soc West Aus, 92, 111 - 128, 2009.

https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-2020-486
Preprint. Discussion started: 9 February 2021

2298 Lévy, M., Shankar, D., André, J., Shenoi, S., Durand, F., and de Boyer Montégut, C.: Basin-wide seasonal evolution of the
2299 Indian Ocean's phytoplankton blooms, J. Geophys. Res. Oceans, doi:112(C12),10.1029/2007JC004090, 2007.

2300 Lighthill, M. J.: Dynamic response of the Indian Ocean to onset of the Southwest Monsoon, Philosophical Transactions of
2301 the Royal Society of London. Series A, Mathematical and Physical Sciences, 265(1159), 45–92,
2302 https://doi.org/10.1098/rsta.1969.0040, 1969.

2303 Locarnini, R. A., Mishonov, A. V., Antonov, J. I., Boyer, T. P., and Garcia, H. E.: World Ocean Atlas 2009, Volume 1:
2304 Temperature, NOAA Atlas NESDIS 68, NOAA, U.S. Government Printing Office, Washington D.C, 2010.

2305 Locarnini, R. A., Mishonov, A. V., Baranova, O. K., Boyer, T. P., Zweng, M. M., Garcia, H. E., Reagan, J. R., Seidov, D.,
2306 Weathers, K., Paver, C. R. and Smolyar, I.: World Ocean Atlas 2018, Volume 1: Temperature, A. Mishonov Technical Ed.;
2307 NOAA Atlas NESDIS 81, 52 pp., 2018.

2308 Longhurst, A. R., and Wooster, W. S.: Abundance of oil sardine (Sardinella longiceps) and upwelling on the southwest coast
2309 of India, Can. J. Fish. Aquat., 47 , 2407–2419. doi:10.1139/f90-268, 1990.

2310 Longhurst, A.: A major seasonal phytoplankton bloom in the Madagascar Basin, Deep-Sea Research Part I: Oceanographic
2311 Research Papers, 48(11), 2413–2422. doi: 10.1016/S0967-0637(01)00024-3, 2001.

2312 Loscher, C.R., Mhor, W., Bange, H.W. and Canfield, D.E. (2020) No nitrogen fixation in the Bay of Bengal?,
2313 Biogeosciences, 17, 851–864, doi:10.5194/bg-17-851-2020.

2314 Lotliker, A. A., Baliarsingh, S. K., Trainer, V. L., Wells, M. L., Wilson, C., Udaya Bhaskar, T. V. S., Samanta, A., and
2315 Shahimol, S. R.: Characterization of oceanic Noctiluca blooms not associated with hypoxia in the Northeastern Arabian
2316 Sea. Harmful Algae, 74, 46–57. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.hal.2018.03.008, 2018.

2317 Lourey, M. J., Dunn, J. R., and Waring, J.: A mixed-layer nutrient climatology of Leeuwin Current and Western Australian
2318 shelf waters: seasonal nutrient dynamics and biomass, J Mar Syst, 59(1-2), 25-51, doi:10.1016/j.jmarsys.2005.10.001, 2006.

2319 Lourey, M., Thompson, P., McLaughlin, J., Bonham, P., and Feng, M.: Primary production and phytoplankton community
2320 structure during a winter shelf-scale phytoplankton bloom off Western Australia, Mar. Biol, 160, 355–369,
2321 doi:10.1007/s00227-012-2093-4, 2012.

2322 Lowe, R. J., Ivey, G. N., Brinkman, R. M., and Jones, N. L.: Seasonal circulation and temperature variability near the North
2323 West Cape of Australia, J. Geophys. Res. Oceans, 117(C4), doi:10.1029/2011JC007653, 2012.

2324 Lugomela, C., Lyimo, T.J., Bryceson, I., Semesi, A.K., and Bergman, B.: *Trichodesmium* in coastal waters of Tanzania:
2325 diversity, seasonality, nitrogen and carbon fixation. Hydrobiologia 477: 1–13, 2002, doi: 10.1023/A:1021017125376, 2002.

https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-2020-486
Preprint. Discussion started: 9 February 2021

2326 Luis, A. J., and Kawamura, H.: Air-sea interaction, coastal circulation and primary production in the eastern arabian sea: A
2327 review, J. Oceanogr, 60, 205–218, doi:10.1023/B:JOCE.0000038327.33559.34, 2004.

2328 Luther, M. E., and O'Brien, J. J.: Modelling the variability of the Somali Current. In J. C. J. Nihoul, & B. M. Jamart (Eds.),
2329 Mesoscale/synoptic coherent structures in geophysical turbulence (pp. 373–386). Amsterdam, Netherlands: Elsevier, 1989.

2330 Luther, M. E., and O'Brien, J. J.: Modelling the variability of the Somali Current. In J. C. J. Nihoul, & B. M. Jamart (Eds.),
2331 Mesoscale/synoptic coherent structures in geophysical turbulence (pp. 373–386). Amsterdam, Netherlands: Elsevier, 1989.

2332 Lutjeharms J. R. E., Connell, A. D. : The Natal Pulse and inshore counter currents off the South African east coast, South
2333 African Journal of Science 85, 533–535, 1989.

2334 Lutjeharms, J. R. E., Boebel, O., and Rossby, H. T. : Agulhas cyclones, Deep Sea Res., Part II, 50(1), 13–34,
2335 https://doi.org/10.1016/S0967-0645(02)00378-8, 2003.

2336 Lutjeharms, J. R. E., and Roberts, H. R.: The Natal pulse: An extreme transient on the Agulhas Current. J. Geophys. Res.,
2337 93(C1), 631, https://doi.org/10.1029/JC093iC01p00631, 1988.

2338 Lutjeharms, J. R. E., Boebel, O., van der Vaart, P. C. F., de Ruijter, W. P. M., Rossby, T., and Bryden, H. L. : Evidence that
2339 the natal pulse involves the Agulhas Current to its full depth, Geophys. Res. Lett., 28(18), 3449–3452.
2340 https://doi.org/10.1029/2000GL012639, 2001.

2341 Lutjeharms, J. R. E., Catzel, R., Valentine, H. R.: Eddies and other boundary phenomena of the Agulhas Current. Continent,
2342 Shelf Res. , 9(7), 597-616, https://doi.org/10.1016/0278-4343(89)90032-0, 1989.

2343 Lutjeharms, J. R. E., Meyer, A. A., Ansorge, I. J., Eagle, G. A., and Orren, M. J.: The nutrient characteristics of the Agulhas
2344 Bank, South African Journal of Marine Science, 17:1, 253-274, DOI: 10.2989/025776196784158464, 1996.

2345 Lutjeharms, J. R. E., Meyer, A. A., Ansorge, I., Eagle, G. A., Orren, M. J.: The nutrient characteristics of the Agulhas Bank,
2346 South African Journal of Marine Science, 17:1, 253-274, doi: 10.2989/025776196784158464, 1996.

2347 Lutjeharms, J. R. E., Valentine, H. R., van Ballegooyen, R. C.: The hydrography and water masses of the Natal Bight, South
2348 Africa, Cont. Shelf Res. 20: 1907–1939, https://doi.org/10.1016/S0278-4343(00)00053-4, 2000.

2349 Lutjeharms, J. R. E.:*The Agulhas Current,* Springer,Berlin, Heidelbert, New York, 2006.

2350 Lutjeharms, J.R.E. 2006. The coastal oceans of south-eastern Africa. In: The Sea, Volume 14B, editors: A. R. Robinson and
2351 K. H. Brink, Harvard University Press, Cambridge, MA, pp. 783- 834.

2352 Lutjeharms, J.R.E., and Jorge da Silva, A.: The Delagoa Bight eddy. Deep-Sea Res., 35, 619-634, doi:10.1016/0198-
2353 0149(88)90134-3, 1988.

2354 Lutjeharms, J.R.E., and Machu, E.: An upwelling cell inshore of the East Madagascar Current. Deep-Sea Res. I, 47, 2405-
2355 2411, doi:10.1016/S0967-0637(00)00026-1, 2000.

2356 Machu, E., Lutjeharms, J. R. E., Webb, A. M., and Van Aken, H. M.: First hydrographic evidence of the southeast
2357 Madagascar upwelling cell, Geophys. Res. Lett., 29(21), 2009, doi:10.1029/2002GL015381, 2002.

2358 Madden, R. A., & Julian, P. R. : Description of Global-Scale Circulation Cells in the Tropics with a 40–50 Day Period.
2359 Journal of the Atmospheric Sciences, 29(6), 1109–1123. https://doi.org/10.1175/1520-
2360 0469(1972)029<1109:DOGSCC>2.0.CO;2, 1972.

2361 Madhupratap, M., Gauns, M., Ramaiah, N., Prasanna Kumar, S., Muraleedharan, P.M., De Sousa, S.N., Sardessai, S. and
2362 Muraleedharan, U. : Biogeochemistry of the Bay of Bengal: physical, chemical and primary productivity characteristics of
2363 the central and western Bay of Bengal during summer monsoon 2001, Deep-Sea Res. II, 50, 881-896, doi: 10.1016/S0967-
2364 0645(02)00611-2, 2003.

2365 Madhupratap, M., Kumar, S. P., Bhattathiri, P., Kumar, M. D., Raghukumar, S., Nair, K., and Ramaiah, N.: Mechanism of
2366 the biological response to winter cooling in the northeastern Arabian Sea, Nature, 384(6609), 549–552,
2367 doi:10.1038/384549a0, 1996.

2368 Mahongo, S.B., Francis, J., and Osima, S.E.: Wind Patterns of Coastal Tanzania: Their Variability and Trends. Western
2369 Indian Ocean J. Mar. Sci., 10 (2), 107-120, 2011.

2370 Malan, N., Backeberg, B., Biastoch, A., Durgadoo, J. V., Samuelsen, A., Reason, C., and Hermes, J. : Agulhas Current
2371 Meanders Facilitate Shelf-Slope Exchange on the Eastern Agulhas Bank. Journal of Geophysical Research: Oceans, 123(7),
2372 4762–4778. https://doi.org/10.1029/2017JC013602, 2018.

2373 Malauene, B.S., Shillington, F.A., Roberts, M.J., and Moloney, C.L.: Cool, elevated chlorophyll a waters off northern
2374 Mozambique. Deep-Sea Res. II 100, 68–78, doi: 10.1016/j.dsr2.2013.10d.017, 2014.

2375 Manghnani, V., Morrison, J. M., Hopkins, T. S., and Bo¨hm, E.: Advection of upwelled waters in the form of plumes off
2376 Oman during the Southwest Monsoon. Deep-Sea Research II, 45, 2027–2052, https://doi.org/10.1016/S0967-
2377 0645(98)00062-9, 1998.

2378 Marra, J., Dickey, T. D., Ho, C., Kinkade, C. S., Sigurdson, D. E., Weller, R., and Barber, R.T.: Variability inprimary
2379 production as observed from moored observations in the central Arabian Sea in 1995, Deep-Sea Research 45, 2253-
2380 2267, https://doi.org/10.1016/S0967-0645(98)00070-8, 1998.

2381 McCosker, E., Davies, C.L. & Beckley, L.E.: Oceanographic influence on coastal zooplankton assemblages at three IMOS
2382 National Reference Stations in Western Australia. Mar. Freshw. Res. 71(12), 1672-1685 https://doi.org/10.1071/MF19397,
2383 2020.

2384 McCreary, J. P. Jr., Kundu, P. K., and Molinari, R. L.: A numerical investigation of dynamics, thermodynamics and mixed
2385 layer processes in the Indian Ocean, Progress in Oceanography, 31, 181–244, https://doi.org/10.1016/0079-6611(93)90002-
2386 U, 1993.

2387 McCreary, J. P., and Kundu, P. K., and Pijush, K..: A numerical investigation of the Somali Current during the Southwest
2388 Monsoon, Journal of Marine Research, 46, 25–58, https://doi.org/10.1357/002224088785113711, 1988.

2389 McCreary, J. P., Kohler, K. E., Hood, R. R., and Olson, D. B.: A four-component ecosystem model of biological activity in
2390 the Arabian Sea. Progress in Oceanography, 37(3-4), 193–240, https://doi.org/10.1016/S0079-6611(96)00005-5, 1996a.

2391 McCreary, J.P., Han, W., Shankar, D., and Shetye, S.R.: Dynamics of the East India Coastal Current 2. Numerical solutions,
2392 J. Geophys. Res., 101, 13993–14010, doi:10.1029/96jc00560, 1996b.

2393 McKinnon, A., and Duggan, S.: Summer copepod production in subtropical waters adjacent to Australia's North West Cape,
2394 Mar. Biol, 143(5), 897-907, doi:10.1007/s00227-003-1153-1, 2003.

2395 McKinnon, A., and Duggan, S.: Summer egg production rates of paracalanid copepods in subtropical waters adjacent to
2396 Australia's North West Cape, Hydrobiologia, 453(1), 121-132, doi:10.1023/A:1013115900841, 2001.

2397 McPhaden M. J., Meyers, G., Ando, K., Masumoto, Y., Murty, V. S. N., Ravichandran, M., Syamsudin, F., Vialard, J., Yu,
2398 L. and Yu, W.: RAMA: The Research Moored Array for African–Asian–Australian Monsoon Analysis and Prediction, Bull.
2399 Am. Meteorol. Soc., 90: 459-480, DOI: 10.1175/2008BAMS2608.1, 2009.

2400 McPhaden, M. J. and Nagura, M.: Indian Ocean Dipole interpreted in terms of Recharge Oscillator theory, *Clim. Dyn.*, **42**,
2401 1569– 1586, doi:10.1007/s00382-013-1765-1, 2014.

2402 Menaché, M.: Première campagne océanographique du "Commandant Robert Giraud" dans le canal de Mozambique, 11
2403 Octobre - 28 Novembre 1957. Cah. Océanogr., 15, 4, 224-35, 1963.

2404 Meyer, A. A., Lutjeharms, J. R. E., de Villiers, S.: The nutrient characteristics of the Natal Bight, South Africa. Journal of
2405 Marine Systems 35 (2002) 11–37, https://doi.org/10.1016/S0924-7963(02)00043-X, 2002.

2406 Miller, A.R., and Risebrough, R.W.: Preliminary cruise report ATLANTIS II, Cruise 8: International Indian Ocean
2407 Expedition, 5 July 1963 – 20 December 1963, 1963, Woods Hole Oceanographic Institution, Woods Hole, Massachusetts,
2408 USA, 32 pp, doi:10.1575/1912/5872, 1963.

https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-2020-486
Preprint. Discussion started: 9 February 2021

2409 Montecino, V., and Lange, C. B.: The Humboldt Current System: Ecosystem components and processes, fisheries, and
2410 sediment studies, Prog. Oceanogr., 83 , 65–79, doi:10.1016/j.pocean.2009.07.041, 2009.

2411 Moore, T. S., Matear, R. J., Marra, J., and Clementson, L.: Phytoplankton variability off the Western Australian Coast:
2412 Mesoscale eddies and their role in cross-shelf exchange, Deep Sea Res. Part II: Top. Stud. Oceanogr., 54(8), 943-960,
2413 doi:10.1016/j.dsr2.2007.02.006, 2007.

2414 Morrison, J. M., Codispoti, L. A., Gaurin, S., Jones, B., Manghnani, V., and Zheng, Z.: Seasonal variation of hydrographic
2415 and nutrient fields during the US JGOFS Arabian Sea Process Study,*Deep-Sea Res. Part II: Trop. Stud. Oceanogr.*, *45*(10–
2416 11), 2053–2101. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0967-0645(98)00063-0, 1998

2417 Muhling, B. A., Beckley, L. E., and Olivar, M. P.: Ichthyoplankton assemblage structure in two meso-scale Leeuwin Current
2418 eddies, eastern Indian Ocean, Deep Sea Res. Part II: Top. Stud. Oceanogr., 54(8), 1113-1128,
2419 doi:10.1016/j.dsr2.2006.05.045, 2007.

2420 Muhling, B. A., Beckley, L. E., Koslow, J. A., and Pearce, A. F.: Larval fish assemblages and water mass structure off the
2421 oligotrophic south-western Australian coast, Fish. Oceanogr., 17(1), 16-31, doi:10.1111/j.1365-2419.2007.00452.x, 2008b.

2422 Muhling, B.A., and Beckley, L.E.: Seasonal variation in horizontal and vertical structure of larval fish assemblages off
2423 south-western Australia, with implications for larval transport, J. Plankton Res., 29(11), 967-983,
2424 doi:10.1093/plankt/fbm072, 2007.

2425 Muhling, B.A., Beckley, L.E., Gaughan, D., Jones, C., Miskiewicz, A., and Hesp, S.: Spawning, larval abundance and
2426 growth rate of Sardinops sagax off southwestern Australia: influence of an anomalous eastern boundary current, Mar. Ecol.
2427 Prog. Ser., 364, 157-167, doi:10.3354/meps07480, 2008a.

2428 Mukherjee, A. and Kalita, B.K: Signature of La Ni˜na in interannual variations of the East India Coastal Current during
2429 spring, Clim. Dyn., 53, 551–568, doi: 10.1007/s00382-018-4601-9, 2019.

2430 Mukherjee, A., Chatterjee, A., and Francis, P.A.: Role of Andaman and Nicobar Islands in eddy formation along western
2431 boundary of the Bay of Bengal, Nature Sci. Rep., 9:10152, doi:10.1038/s41598-019-46542-9, 2019.

2432 Mukherjee, A., Shankar, D., Chatterjee, A., and Vinayachandran, P. N.: Numerical simulation of the observed near-surface
2433 East India Coastal Current on the continental slope, Clim. Dyn., 50, 3949–3980, doi:https://doi.org/10.1007/s00382-017-
2434 3856-x, 2017.

2435 Mukherjee, A., D Shankar, V Fernando, P Amol, SG Aparna, R Fernandes, GS Michael, ST Khalap, NP
2436 Satelkar, Y Agarvadekar, MG Gaonkar, AP Tari, A Kankonkar, and S Vernekar. Observed seasonal and

2437 intraseasonal variability of the East India Coastal Current on the continental slope, Journal of Earth
2438 System Science, 123, 1197–1232, doi:10.1007/s12040-014-0471-7, 2014.

2439 Mukhopadhyay, S., D Shankar, SG Aparna, A Mukherjee, V Fernando, A Kankonkar, S Khalap, N
2440 Satelkar, MG Gaonkar, AP Tari, R Khedekar, and S Ghatkar. Observed variability of the East India
2441 Coastal Current on the continental slope during 2009–2018, Journal of Earth System Science, 129,
2442 77, doi:10.1007/s12040-020-1346-8, 2020.

2443 Mulholland, M. R., and Capone, D. G.: Dinitrogen fixation in the Indian Ocean, Indian Ocean Biogeochem. Process. Ecol.
2444 Var., 167–186, doi: 10.1029/2009GM000850, 2009.

2445 Murgese, D. S., and De Deckker, P.: The distribution of deep-sea benthic foraminifera in core tops from the eastern Indian
2446 Ocean, Mar. Micropaleontol., 56, 25-49, doi:10.1016/j.marmicro.2005.03.005, 2005.

2447 Murthy, A. V. S.: Observations of coastal upwelling around India, In J.Lighthill and R.P.Pearse (Ed.) Monsoon dynamics,
2448 Cambridge University Press, 523-528, 1981.

2449 Murtugudde, R., McCreary, J. P. and Busalacchi, A. J.: Oceanic processes associated with anomalous events in the Indian
2450 Ocean with relevance to 1997–1998; J. Geophys. Res. – Oceans 105(C2) 3295–3306,
2451 https://doi.org/10.1029/1999JC900294, 2000.

2452 Murty, B. C.: On the temperature and salinity structure of the Bay of Bengal, Curr. Sci., 27(7), 249-249, 1958.

2453 Murty, C.S. and Varadachari, V.V.R.: Upwelling along the east coast of India, B. Natl. Inst. Sci. India, 38, 80–86, 1968.

2454 Mwaluma, J.: Zooplankton species distribution and abundance during the monsoons off the Kenyan coast, 1992. In: Heip
2455 C.H.R., Hemminga, M.A., and de Bie, M.J.M. (Eds), Monsoons and Coastal Ecosystems in Kenya. Cruise reports
2456 Netherlands Indian Ocean Programme, 5, National Museum of Natural History, Leiden, Netherlands, 113–115, 1995.

2457 Naqvi S.W., Naik H., Jayakumar D., Shailaja M., Narvekar P. (2006): Seasonal Oxygen Deficiency over the western
2458 continental shelf of India, In: Neretin L. (eds), Past and Present Water Column Anoxia. Nato Science Series: IV: Earth and
2459 Environmental Sciences, 64. Springer, Dordrecht. https://doi.org/10.1007/1-4020-4297-3_08, 2006.

2460 Naqvi, S. W. A, Bange, H. W., Gibb, S. W., Goyet, C., Hatton, A. D., and Upstill-Goddard, R. C.: Biogeochemical ocean-
2461 atmosphere transfers in the Arabian Sea,*Prog. Oceanogr.*, *65*(2-4 SPEC. ISS.), 116–144,
2462 https://doi.org/10.1016/j.pocean.2005.03.005, 2005

2463 Naqvi, S. W. A., Bange, H. W., Farías, L., Monteiro, P. M. S., Scranton, M. I., and Zhang, J.: Marine hypoxia/anoxia as a
2464 source of CH_4 and N_2O, *Biogeosciences*, *7*(7), 2159–2190, https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-7-2159-2010 , 2010

2465 Naqvi, S. W. A., Bange, H. W., Gibb, S. W., Goyet, C., Hatton, A. D., and Upstill-Goddard, R. C.: Biogeochemical ocean
2466 atmosphere transfers in the Arabian Sea, *Prog. Oceanogr.*, 65, 116–144, https://doi.org/10.1016/j.pocean.2005.03.005,
2467 2005

https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-2020-486
Preprint. Discussion started: 9 February 2021

2468 Naqvi, S. W. A., Naik, H., and NarvekarP. V.:The Arabian Sea, in: Biogeochemistry of Marine Systems, edited by: Black,
2469 K. and Shimmield, G., Sheffield Academic Press, Sheffield, 156– 206, 2003

2470 Naqvi, S. W. A., Naik, H.,Jayakumar, D. A.,Shailaja, M. S.,and NarvekarP. V.: Seasonal oxygen deficiency over the western
2471 continental shelf of India, in: *Past and Present Water Column Anoxia*, edited by: Neretin, L. N., NATO Science Series, IV.
2472 *Earth and Environmental Sciences*, vol. 64, Springer, Dordrecht, 195–224, 2006

2473 Naqvi, S. W. A., Naik,H., Jayakumar, D. A.,Pratihary, A.,Narvenkar, G.,Kurian, S.,Agnihotri, R.,Shailaja, M. S.,and
2474 NarvekarP. V.: Seasonal anoxia over the western Indian continental shelf, in: Indian Ocean: Biogeochemical Processes and
2475 Ecological Variability, edited by: Wiggert, J. D., Hood, R. R., Naqvi, S. W. A., Brink, K. H., and Smith, S. L., *Geophys.*
2476 *Monogr. Ser.*, 185, AGU, Washington, D.C., 333–345, 2009

2477 Naqvi, S. W. A., Shailaja, M. S., Kumar, M. D., and SenGupta, R.: Respiration rates in subsurface waters of the northern
2478 Indian Ocean: Evidence for low decomposition rates of organic matter within the water column in the Bay of Bengal, Deep
2479 Sea Res., Part I, 43, 73 – 81, doi: 10.1016/0967-0645(95)00080-1, 1996.

2480 Naqvi, S., Jayakumar, D., Narvekar, P., Naik, H., Sarma, V., D'souza, W., Joseph, S., and George, M.: Increased marine
2481 production of N_2O due to intensifying anoxia on the Indian continental shelf, Nature, 408, 346–349,
2482 https://doi.org/10.1038/35042551, 2000.

2483 Naqvi, S.: Geographical extent of denitrification in the Arabian Sea in relation to some physical processes, Oceanologica
2484 Acta, 14 , 281–290, url: http://drs.nio.org/drs/handle/2264/3222, 1991.

2485 Naulita, Y., Arhatin, R. E. and Nabil: Upwelling index along the south coast of Java from satellite imagery of wind stress
2486 and sea surface temperature, IOP Conf. Series, Earth Environ. Sci., 429, 012025, doi:10.1088/1755-1315/429/1/012025,
2487 2020.

2488 Nehring, D. ed., : The oceanological conditions in the western part of the Mozambique Channel in February-March 1980.
2489 Geodät. geophys. Veröffentl., 4, 163 pp, 1984.

2490 Nehring, D., E. Hagen, A. Jorge da Silva, R. Schemainda, G. Wolf, N. Michelchen, W. Kaiser, L. Postel, F. Gosselck, U.
2491 Brenning, E. Kühner, G. Arlt, H. Siegel, L. Gohs and G. Bublitz, : Results of oceanological studies in the Mozambique
2492 Channel in February – March 1980. Beitr. Meereskd., 56, 51-63, 1987.

2493 Newell, B. S.: The hydrography of the British East African Coastal Waters. London, East African Marine Fisheries Research
2494 Organisation. Fishery Publications, 12, 23p, 1959.

2495 Nguli, M. M.: Temperature, salinity and water mass structure along the Kenyan coast during the 1992 cruises A1 and A2 of
2496 R.V. Tyro. In: Heip C.H.R., Hemminga, M.A., and de Bie, M.J.M. (Eds), Monsoons and Coastal Ecosystems in Kenya.
2497 Cruise reports Netherlands Indian Ocean Programme, 5, National Museum of Natural History, Leiden, Netherlands, 71-80,
2498 1995.

https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-2020-486
Preprint. Discussion started: 9 February 2021

2499 Noyon, M., Morris, T., Walker, D., and Huggett, J.: Plankton distribution within a young cyclonic eddy off south-western
2500 Madagascar, Deep-Sea Research Part II, 166, 141–150, doi:10.1016/j.dsr2.2018.11.001, 2019.

2501 Nuncio, M., and Kumar, S. P.: Life cycle of eddies along the western boundary of the Bay of Bengal and their implications,
2502 J. Marine. Syst., 94, 9–17, doi:10.1016/j.jmarsys.2011.10.002, 2012.

2503 Nyadjro, E. S., Jensen, T. G., Richman, J. G., and Shriver, J. F.:On the relationship between wind, SST and the thermocline
2504 in the Seychelles-Chagos Thermocline Ridge.IEEE Geoscience and Remote Sensing Letters, **14**(12),2315–2319,
2505 https://doi.org/10.1109/LGRS.2017.2762961, 2017.

2506 Ockhuis, S., Huggett, J.A., Gouws, G., and Sparks, C.: The 'suitcase hypothesis': Can entrainment of meroplankton by
2507 eddies provide a pathway for gene flow between Madagascar and KwaZulu-Natal, South Africa? African Journal of Marine
2508 Science, 39, 4, 435-451, doi:10.2989/1814232X.2017.1399292, 2017.

2509 Ogata, T. and Masumoto, Y.: Interactions between mesoscale eddy variability and Indian Ocean dipole events in the
2510 Southeastern tropical Indian Ocean—case studies for 1994 and 1997/1998, Ocean Dyn., 60, 717–730, doi:10.1007/s10236-
2511 010-0304-4, 2010.

2512 Ogata, T. and Masumoto, Y.:, Interannual modulation and its dynamics of the mesoscale eddy variability in the southeastern
2513 tropical Indian Ocean, J. Geophys. Res., 116, C05005, doi:10.1029/2010JC006490, 2011.

2514 Olsen, E., Padera, M., Funke, M., Pires, P., Wenneck, T., and Zacarias, L.: Cruise Reports Dr Fridtjof Nansen. Survey of
2515 the living marine resources of North Mozambique (SWIOFP/ASCLME 2009 Cruise 1) 6 August–20 August 2009. Report
2516 No. EAF-N/2009/7. Institute of Marine Research, Bergen, Norway, 2009.

2517 Painter, S.C.: The biogeochemistry and oceanography of the East African Coastal Current. Progress in Oceanography, 186,
2518 102374, doi:10.1016/j.pocean.2020.102374, 2020.

2519 Panikkar, N. K., and Jayaraman R.: Biological and oceanographic differences between the Arabian Sea and the Bay of
2520 Bengal as observed from the Indian region, *Proceedings of the Indian Academy of Sciences*, 64 B, 231-
2521 240, https://doi.org/10.1007/BF03052161,
2522 1966.

2523 Pankajakshan, T., Pattanaik, J., and Ghosh, A. K.: An atlas of upwelling indices along east and west coast of India, IODC,
2524 NIO of India, 1997.

2525 Parameswaran, U. V., Abdul Jaleel, K. U., Sanjeevan, V. N., Gopal, A., Vijayan, A. K., Gupta, G. V. M., and Sudhakar, M.:
2526 Diversity and distribution of echinoderms in the South Eastern Arabian Sea shelf under the influence of seasonal hypoxia,
2527 *Prog. Oceanogr.*, *165*, 189–204, https://doi.org/10.1016/j.pocean.2018.06.005, 2018.

2528 Parvathi, V., Suresh, I., Lengaigne, M., Ethe, C., Vialard, J., Levy, M., Neetu, S., Aumont, O., Resplandy, L., Naik, H., and
2529 Naqvi, S.W.A.: Positive Indian Ocean dipole events prevent anoxia off the west coast of India, *Biogeosciences* 14 (6), 1541–
2530 1559, doi:10.5194/bg-14-1541-2017, 2017.

https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-2020-486
Preprint. Discussion started: 9 February 2021

2531 Paterson, H. L., Feng, M., Waite, A. M., Gomis, D., Beckley L. E., Holliday, D. and Thompson, P. A.: Physical and chemical
2532 signatures of a developing anti-cyclonic eddy in the Leeuwin Current, Eastern Indian Ocean, J. Geophys. Res., 113,
2533 C07049:1-14, doi:10.1029/2007JC004707, 2008.

2534 Pauly, D., and Christensen, V.: Primary production required to sustain global fisheries, *Nature*, 374**,** 255–257,
2535 https://doi.org/10.1038/374255a0, 1995.

2536 Pearce, A. F., and Pattiaratchi, C.: The Capes Current: a summer countercurrent flowing past Cape Leeuwin and Cape
2537 Naturaliste, Western Australia, Cont Shelf Res., 19(3), 401-420, doi:10.1016/S0278-4343(98)00089-2, 1999.

2538 Pearce, A. F., Lynch, M., and Hanson, C. E.: The Hillarys Transect (1): seasonal and cross-shelf variability of physical and
2539 chemical water properties off Perth, Western Australia, 1996–98. Cont Shelf Res., 26(15), 1689-1729,
2540 doi:10.1016/j.csr.2006.05.008, 2006.

2541 Pearce, A. F.: Eastern boundary currents of the southern hemisphere. J. R. Soc. West, Aus., 74, 35-45, 1991.

2542 Phillips, B. F., and Pearce, A. F.: Spiny lobster recruitment off Western Australia, Bull. Mar. Sci., 61(1), 21-41, 1997.

2543 Piontkovski, S. A., and Al-Oufi, H. S.: The Omani shelf hypoxia and the warming Arabian Sea. International Journal of
2544 Environmental Studies, *72*(2), 256-264, doi:10.1080/00207233.2015.1012361, 2015.

2545 Pivan, X., Krug, M., and Herbette, S.: Observations of the vertical and temporal evolution of a Natal Pulse along the
2546 Eastern Agulhas Bank, J. Geophys. Res. Oceans, 121, 7108– 7122, doi:10.1002/2015JC011582, 2016.

2547 Prakash, P., Prakash, S., Rahaman, H., Ravichandran and M., Nayak, S.: Is the trend in chlorophyll-a in the Arabian Sea
2548 decreasing? Geophys. Res. Lett. 39, L23605. http://dx.doi.org/10.1029/2012GL054187, 2012.

2549 Prakash, S., and Ramesh, R.: Is the Arabian Sea getting more productive?,Current Science, *92*(5), 667–671, 2007.

2550 Prakash, S., Prakash, P., Ravichandran, M. : Can oxycline depth be estimated using Sea Level Anomaly (SLA) in the
2551 northern Indian Ocean?, Remote Sensing Letters, 4 (11), 1097–1106, doi: 10.1080/2150704X.2013.842284, 2013.

2552 Prakash, S., Ramesh, R., Sheshshayee, M., Dwivedi, R., and Raman, M.: Quantification of new production during a winter
2553 Noctiluca scintillans bloom in the Arabian Sea, Geophys. Res. Lett., 35(8), doi:10.1029/2008GL033819, 2008.

2554 Prakash, S., Roy, R., and Lotliker, A.: Revisiting the Noctiluca scintillans paradox in northern Arabian Sea, Curr. Sci.,
2555 113(7), 1429, doi:10.18520/cs/v113/i07/1429-1434, 2017.

https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-2020-486
Preprint. Discussion started: 9 February 2021

2556 Prasanna Kumar, S., Nuncio, M., Ramaiah, N., Sardesai, S., Narvekar, J., Fernandes, V., and Paul, J. T. : Eddy-mediated
2557 biological productivity in the Bay of Bengal during fall and spring intermonsoons, Deep Sea Res., Part I, 54, 1619–1640,
2558 doi:10.1016/j.dsr.2007.06.002, 2007.

2559 Prasanna Kumar, S., M. Madhupratap, M. Dileep Kumar, P. M. Muraleedharan, S. N. de Souza, M. Gauns, and Sarma V.
2560 V. S. S.: High biological productivity in the central Arabian Sea during summer monsoon driven by Ekman pumping and
2561 lateral advection, Current Science, 81, 1633 – 1638, 2001.

2562 Prasanna Kumar, S., Nuncio, M., Narvekar, J., Kumar, A., Sardesai, S., De Souza, S.N., Gauns, M., Ramaiah, N., and
2563 Madhupratap, M.: Are eddies nature's trigger to enhance biological productivity in the Bay of Bengal?, Geophys. Res. Lett,
2564 31, L07309, doi: 10.1029/2003GL019274, 2004.

2565 Praveen, V., Ajayamohan, R. S., Valsala, V., and Sandeep, S.: Intensification of upwelling along Oman coast in a warming
2566 scenario, *Geophys.Res. Lett., 43*(14), 7581-7589, 2016.

2567 Pripp. T., Gammelsrød, T., and Krakstad, J.O.: Physical influence on biological production along the western shelf of
2568 Madagascar. Deep-Sea Research II, 100, 174–183, doi:10.1016/j.dsr2.2013.10.025, 2014.

2569 Qu, T. and Meyers, G.: Seasonal characteristics of circulation in the southeastern tropical Indian Ocean, J. Phys. Oceanogr.,
2570 35, 255-267, doi:10.1175/JPO-2682.1, 2005a.

2571 Qu, T. and Meyers, G.: Seasonal variation of barrier layer in the southeastern tropical Indian Ocean, J. Geophys. Res., 110,
2572 C11003, doi:10.1029/2004JC002816, 2005b.

2573 Qu, T., Meyers, G. and Godfrey, J. S.: Ocean dynamics in the region between Australia and Indonesia and its influence on
2574 the variation of sea surface temperature in a global general circulation model, J. Geophys. Res., 99, 18,433-18,445,
2575 https://doi.org/10.1029/94JC00858, 1994.

2576 Quadfasel, D. and Cresswell, G. R.: A note on the seasonal variability of the South Java Current, J. Geophys. Res., 97,
2577 3685–3688, doi:10.1029/91JC03056, 1992.

2578 Quadfasel, D., and Schott, F.: Water mass distribution at intermediate layers off the Somali coast during the onset of the
2579 southwest monsoon 1979, Journal of Physical Oceanography, 12, 1358–1372, https://doi.org/10.1175/1520-
2580 0485(1982)012<1358:WMDAIL>2.0.CO;2, 1982.

2581 Quartly, G.D., and Srokosz, M.A.: Eddies in the southern Mozambique Channel. Deep-Sea Res. II, 51, 69–83,
2582 doi:10.1016/j.dsr2.2003.03.001, 2004.

2583 Raes, E. J., Bodrossy, L., van de Kamp, J., Bissett, A., and Waite, A. M.: Marine bacterial richness increases towards higher
2584 latitudes in the eastern Indian Ocean, Limnol. Oceanogr. Letters, 3(1), 10-19, doi:10.1002/lol2.10058, 2018.

https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-2020-486
Preprint. Discussion started: 9 February 2021

2585 Raes, E. J., Thompson, P. A., McInnes, A. S., Nguyen, H. M., Hardman-Mountford, N., and Waite, A. M.: Sources of new
2586 nitrogen in the Indian Ocean, Global Biogeochem Cycles, 29(8), 1283-1297, doi:10.1002/2015GB005194, 2015.

2587 Raes, E. J., Waite, A. M., McInnes, A. S., Olsen, H., Nguyen, H. M., Hardman-Mountford, N., and Thompson, P. A.:
2588 Changes in latitude and dominant diazotrophic community alter N2 fixation, Mar. Ecol. Prog. Ser., 516, 85-102,
2589 doi:10.3354/meps11009, 2014.

2590 Rahmstorf, S.: Thermohaline circulation: The current climate, Nature, 421(6924), 699–699.
2591 https://doi.org/10.1038/421699a, 2003.

2592 Raj, R.P., Peter, B.N., and Pushpadas, D.: Oceanic and atmospheric influences on the variability of phytoplankton bloom in
2593 the Southwestern Indian Ocean, Journal of Marine Systems 82 (2010) 217–229, doi:10.1016/j.jmarsys.2010.05.009, 2010.

2594 Ramamirtham, C. P., and Rao, D. S.: On upwelling along the west coast of India, J. mar. biol. Ass. India, 15 , 306–317,
2595 1973.

2596 Ramanantsoa, J. D., Penven, P., Krug, M., Gula, J., and Rouault, M.: Uncovering a new current: The Southwest MAdagascar
2597 Coastal Current. Geophys. Res. Lett., 45, https://doi.org/10.1002/2017GL075900, 2018b.

2598 Ramanantsoa, J.D., Krug, M, Penvend, P., Rouault, M., and Gula J.: Coastal upwelling south of Madagascar: Temporal and
2599 spatial variability. Journal of Marine Systems, 178, 29-37, doi:10.1016/j.jmarsys.2017.10.005, 2018a.

2600 Ramaswamy, V.,Nair., R. R. , Manganini, S., Hakke, B., and Ittekkot, V. : Lithogenic fluxes to the deep Arabian Sea
2601 measured by sediment traps, Deep Sea Res., Part A, 38, 169–184, doi: 10.1016/0198-0149(91)90078-T, 1991.

2602 Rao, A. D., Joshi, M., and Ravichandran, M.: Oceanic upwelling and downwelling processes in waters off the west coast of
2603 India, Ocean Dyn, 58 , 213–226, doi:10.1007/s10236-008-0147-4, 2008.

2604 Rao, A., Joshi, M., and Babu, S.: A three-dimensional numerical model of coastal upwelling along the west coast of India,
2605 Math Comput Model., 41, 177–195, doi:10.1016/j.mcm.2004.08.004, 2005.

2606 Rao, R. R., and Sivakumar, R.: On the possible mechanisms of the evolution of a mini-warm pool during the pre-summer
2607 monsoon season and the genesis of onset vortex in the South-Eastern Arabian Sea, Q. J. R. Meteorol. Soc., 125 , 787–809,
2608 doi:10.1002/qj.49712555503, 1999.

2609 Rao, R. R., Girish Kumar, M. S., Ravichandran, M., Rao, A. R., Gopalakrishna, V. V., and Thadathil, P.: Interannual
2610 variability of Kelvin wave propagation in the wave guides of the equatorial Indian Ocean, the coastal Bay of Bengal and
2611 the southeastern Arabian Sea during 1993–2006, Deep-Sea Res., Part-I., 57,1–13, doi:10.1016/j.dsr.2009.10.008, 2009.

2612 Rao, T.V.N., Rao, D.P., Rao, B.P., and Raju, V. S. R.: Upwelling and Sinking along Visakhapatnam coast, Indian J. Mar.
2613 Sci., 15:84–87, 1986.

https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-2020-486
Preprint. Discussion started: 9 February 2021

2614 Rath, S., Vinayachandran, P. N., Behara, A., and Neema, C. P. : Dynamics of summer monsoon current around Sri Lanka,
2615 Ocean Dynamics, 69(10), 1133–1154. https://doi.org/10.1007/s10236-019-01295-x, 2019.

2616 Rennie, S. J., Pattiaratchi, C. P., and McCauley, R. D.: Eddy formation through the interaction between the Leeuwin Current,
2617 Leeuwin Undercurrent and topography, Deep Sea Res. Part II: Top. Stud. Oceanogr., 54(8), 818-836,
2618 doi:10.1016/j.dsr2.2007.02.005, 2007.

2619 Resplandy, L., Lévy, M., Madec, G., Pous, S., Aumont, O., and Kumar, D. : Contribution of mesoscale processes to nutrient
2620 budgets in the Arabian Sea, J. Geophys. Res. , 116(C11), C11007. https://doi.org/10.1029/2011JC007006, 2011.

2621 Resplandy, L., Vialard, J., Lévy, M., Aumont, O., and Dandonneau, Y.: Seasonal and intraseasonal biogeochemical
2622 variability in the thermocline ridge of the southern tropical Indian Ocean, J. Geophys. Res. , 114(C7), C07024.
2623 https://doi.org/10.1029/2008JC005246, 2009.

2624 Ridderinkhof H., and de Ruiter, W.: Moored current observations in the Mozambique Channel, Deep-Sea Res. II, 50, 1933–
2625 1955, doi:10.1016/S0967-0645(03)00041-9, 2003.

2626 Rixen, T., Cowie, G., Gaye, B., Goes, J. I., Gomes, H., Hood, R. R., Lachkar, Z., Schmidt, H., Segschneider, J. and Singh,
2627 A.: Reviews and syntheses: Present, past, and future of the oxygen minimum zone in the northern Indian Ocean,
2628 Biogeosciences, 17, 1–30, doi:10.5194/bg-17-1-2020, 2020.

2629 Roberts M, Nieuwenhys C.: Observations and mechanisms of upwelling in the northern KwaZulu-Natal Bight, African
2630 Journal of Marine Science 38: sup1, S43-S63, doi: 10.2989/1814232X.2016.1194319, 2016.

2631 Roberts, M. J. : Chokka squid (Loligo vulgaris reynaudii) abundance linked to changes in South Africa's Agulhas Bank
2632 ecosystem during spawning and the early life cycle. ICES Journal of Marine Science, 62(1), 33–55.
2633 https://doi.org/10.1016/j.icesjms.2004.10.002, 2005.

2634 Roberts, M. J., and M. van den Berg: Currents along the Tsitsikamma Coast South Africa and potential transport of squid
2635 paralarvae and ichthyoplankton,. African Journal of marine Science. 27(2): 375–388, doi:10.2989/18142320509504096,
2636 2005.

2637 Roberts, M.: The Western Indian Ocean Upwelling Research Initiative (WIOURI): A Flagship IIOE2 Project. CLIVAR
2638 Exchanges, 19, 26-30 , http://www.researchgate.net/publication/283855749, 2015.

2639 Roberts, M.J., Ribbink, A.J., Morris, T., Duncan, F., Barlow, R., Kaehler, S., Huggett, J., Kyewalyanga, M., Harding, R.,
2640 and van den Berg, M.: 2007 Western Indian Ocean Cruise and Data Report: Alg. 160. African Coelacanth Ecosystem
2641 Programme, Grahamstown, 142 pp, doi:10.13140/RG.2.2.28920.88324, 2008.

2642 Roberts, M.J., Ternon, J-F., and Morris, T.: Interaction of dipole eddies with the western continental slope of the
2643 Mozambique Channel. Deep-Sea Research II, 100, 54–67, doi:10.1016/j.dsr2.2013.10.016, 2014.

https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-2020-486
Preprint. Discussion started: 9 February 2021

2644 Roberts, M.J.: Coastal currents and temperatures along the central region of Algoa Bay, South Africa, with implications for
2645 transport and shelf–bay water exchange. African Journal of Marine Science, 32(1): 145–161,
2646 doi:10.2989/1814232X.2010.481153, 2010.

2647 Robinson, A.R. (Ed.) Eddies in Marine Science. Springer-Verlag, Berlin, 1983.

2648 Robinson, J., Guillotreau, P., Jiménez-Toribio, R., Lantz, F., Nadzon, L., Dorizo, J., Gerry, C., and Marsac, F. : Impacts of
2649 climate variability on the tuna economy of Seychelles. Climate Research, 43(3), 149–162. https://doi.org/10.3354/cr00890,
2650 2010.

2651 Rochford, D. J.: Seasonal interchange of high and low salinity surface waters off south-west Australia, CSIRO, Division of
2652 Fisheries and Oceanography Technical Paper No. 29, 1969

2653 Roman, R., Kaehler, S., Michalsen, K., Olsen, M., and Perri, M.: Cruise Reports Dr Fridtjof Nansen. Survey of the Comoros
2654 Gyre (ASCLME & SWIOFP) 5 October–3 November 2009. Report No. EAF-N2009/9. Institute of Marine Research,
2655 Bergen, Norway, 2009.

2656 Rossi, V., Feng, M., Pattiaratchi, C., Roughan, M., and Waite, A. M.: Linking synoptic forcing and local mesoscale processes
2657 with biological dynamics off Ningaloo Reef. J. Geophys. Res. Oceans, 118(3), 1211-1225, doi:10.1002/jgrc.20110, 2013a.

2658 Rossi, V., Feng, M., Pattiaratchi, C., Roughan, M., and Waite, A. M.: On the factors influencing the development of sporadic
2659 upwelling in the Leeuwin Current system, J. Geophys. Res. Oceans, 118(7), 3608-3621, doi:10.1002/jgrc.20242, 2013b.

2660 Rouault, M. J., Penven, P.: New perspectives on Natal Pulses from satellite observations, J. Geophys. Res.,116, C07013,
2661 doi:10.1029/2010JC006866, 2011.

2662 Rousseaux, C. S., Lowe, R., Feng, M., Waite, A. M., and Thompson, P. A.: The role of the Leeuwin Current and mixed
2663 layer depth on the autumn phytoplankton bloom off Ningaloo Reef, Western Australia, Cont Shelf Res., 32, 22-35,
2664 doi:10.1016/j.csr.2011.10.010, 2012.

2665 Roxy, M. K., Modi, A., Murtugudde, R., Valsala, V., Panickal, S., Prasanna Kumar, S., and Lévy, M.: A reduction in marine
2666 primary productivity driven by rapid warming over the tropical Indian Ocean, *Geophys.Res. Lett*, *43*(2), 826-833,
2667 https://doi.org/10.1002/2015GL066979, 2016.

2668 Sabarros, P.S., Ménard, F., Lévénez, J.-J., Tew-Kai, E., and Ternon, J.-F.: Mesoscale eddies influence distribution and
2669 aggregation patterns of micronekton in the Mozambique Channel. Mar. Ecol. Prog. Ser. 395, 101–107,
2670 doi:10.3354/meps08087, 2009.

2671 Sætre, R., and de Paula e Silva, R.: The marine fish resources of Mozambique. Reports on surveys with the R/V Dr Fridtjof
2672 Nansen, Serviço de Investigações Pesqueiras, Maputo, Institute of Marine Research, Bergen, Norway, 179 pp, 1979.

https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-2020-486
Preprint. Discussion started: 9 February 2021

2673 Saji, N.H., Goswami, B.N., Vinayachandran, P.N., and Yamagata, T.: A dipole mode in the tropical Indian Ocean, Nature.,
2674 401, 360–363, doi:10.1038/43854, 1999.

2675 Sarma V. V. S. S., Yadava, K. and Dalabehera, H. B: Role of eddies on organic matter production and f-ratios in the Bay of
2676 Bengal, Marine Chemistry, doi: 10.1016/j.marchem.2019.01.006, 2019.

2677 Sarma, G. S.: Seasonal variation of some hydrographic properties of the shelf waters off the west coast of India, Bull. Nat.
2678 Inst. Sci. India, 38263–276, 263–276, 1968.

2679 Sarma, G. S.: Upwelling off the southwest coast of India, Indian J.Mar. Sci., 7 , 209–218,
2680 http://nopr.niscair.res.in/handle/123456789/39557, 1978.

2681 Sarma, V. V. S. S. and Dalabehera, H.B.: New and primary production in the western Indian Ocean during fall monsoon,
2682 Marine Chemistry, doi: 10.1016/j.marchem.2019.103687, 2019.

2683 Sarma, V. V. S. S. and Udaya Bhaskar, T.V.S. : Ventilation of oxygen to oxygen minimum zone due to anticyclonic eddies
2684 in the Bay of Bengal, J. Geophys. Res. Biogeosci., 123, 2145-2153, doi: 10.1029/2018JG004447, 2018.

2685 Sarma, V. V. S. S. Sridevi, B., Maneesha, K., Sridevi, T., Naidu, S. A., Prasad, V. R., Venkataraman, V., Achrya, T., Bharati,
2686 M. D., Subbaiah, Ch.V., Kiran, B.S., Reddy, N. C. P., Sarma, V. V., Sadhuram, Y., Murty, T. V. R: Impact of atmospheric
2687 and physical forcings on biogeochemical cycling of dissolved oxygen and nutrients in the coastal Bay of Bengal, Journal of
2688 Oceanography, 69(2), 229-243, Doi: 10.1007/s10872-012-0168-y, 2013.

2689 Sarma, V. V. S. S., Krishna, M. S., Viswanadham, R., Rao, G. D., Rao, V. D., Sridevi, B., Kumar, B. S. K., Prasad, V. R.,
2690 Subbaiah, C. V., Acharyya, T. and Bandopadhyay, D. : Intensified oxygen minimum zone on the western shelf of Bay of
2691 Bengal during summer monsoon: influence of river discharge, J. Oceanogr., 69, 45-55, Doi: 10.1007/s10872-012-0156-2,
2692 2012.

2693 Sarma, V. V. S. S., Rao, D. N., Rajula, G. R., Dalabehera, H. B., and Yadav, K. : Organic Nutrients Support High Primary
2694 Production in the Bay of Bengal, Geophys. Res. Lett., Doi: 10.1029/2019GL082262, 2019.

2695 Sarma, V. V. S. S.: Net plankton community production in the Arabian Sea based on O2 mass balance model, Global
2696 biogeochem. cycles, *18*(4), https://doi.org/10.1029/2003GB002198, 2004

2697 Sastry, A. A. R., and Myrland, P.: Distribution of temperature, salinity and density in the Arabian Sea along the South
2698 Malabar Coast (South India) during the post-monsoon season, Indian J. Fish., 6 , 223–255, 1959.

2699 Saunders, M. I., Thompson, P. A., Jeffs, A. G., Säwström, C., Sachlikidis, N., Beckley, L. E., and Waite, A. M.: Fussy
2700 feeders: phyllosoma larvae of the western rocklobster (Panulirus cygnus) demonstrate prey preference, PLoS One, 7(5),
2701 doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0036580, 2012.

https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-2020-486
Preprint. Discussion started: 9 February 2021

2702 Saville-Kent, W.: The naturalist in Australia, 302 pp.: CRC Press, Boca Raton, Fla, doi:10.5962/bhl.title.18339, 1897.

2703 Säwström, C., Beckley, L. E., Saunders, M. I., Thompson, P. A., and Waite, A. M.: The zooplankton prey field for rock
2704 lobster phyllosoma larvae in relation to oceanographic features of the south-eastern Indian Ocean, J. Plankton Res., 36(4),
2705 1003-1016, doi:10.1093/plankt/fbu019, 2014.

2706 Saxena, H., Sahoo, D., Khan, M. A., Kumar, S., Sudheer, A. K. and Singh, A.:Dinitrogen fixation rates in the Bay of
2707 Bengal during summer monsoon, Environmental Research Communications, 2, 051007, doi: 10.1088/2515-7620/ab89fa,
2708 2020.

2709 Schmidt, T. M., DeLong, E. F., and Pace, N. R.: Analysis of a marine picoplankton community by 16S rRNA gene cloning
2710 and sequencing, J. Bacteriol., 173(14), 4371-4378, doi:10.1128/jb.173.14.4371-4378.1991, 1991.

2711 Schott, F., and McCreary, J. P.: The monsoon circulation of the Indian Ocean, *Prog. Oceanogr.*, 51 (1) ,1 –123,
2712 https://doi.org/10.1016/S0079-6611(01)00083-0, 2001.

2713 Schott, F., Fischer, J., Garternicht, U., and Quadfasel, D.: Summer monsoon response of the Northern Somali Current, 1995.
2714 Geophys. Res. Lett., 24, 2565–2568, https://doi.org/10.1029/97GL00888, 1997.

2715 Schott, F.: Monsoon response of the Somali Current and associated upwelling. Progress in Oceanography, 12, 3, 357–381,
2716 doi:10.1016/0079-6611(83)90014-9, 1983.

2717 Schott, F.A., and McCreary, J.P.: The monsoon circulation in the Indian Ocean. Prog.Oceanogr. 51, 1–123,
2718 https://doi.org/10.1016/S0079-6611(01)00083-0, 1991.

2719 Schott, F.A., Xie, S.P., and McCreary, J.P.: Indian Ocean circulation and climate variability. Reviews of Geophysics, 47, 1,
2720 1–46, doi:10.1029/2007RG000245, 2009.

2721 Sen Gupta, R., Moraes, C., George, M. D., Kureishy, T. W., Noronha, R.J., and Fondekar, S. P.: Chemistry and
2722 hydrography of the Andaman Sea, Indian Journal of Marine Sciences, 10,228-233, Doi: 10.1016/0198-0149(84)90035-9,
2723 1981.

2724 SenGupta, R. and Naqvi, S.W.A.: Chemical Oceanography of the Indian Ocean, North of equator, Deep Sea Research, 31,
2725 671-706, https://doi.org/10.1016/0198-0149(84)90035-9, 1984.

2726 Sewell, R. B. S.: The temperature and salinity of the surface-waters of the Bay of Bengal and Andaman Sea, with reference
2727 to Laccadive Sea, in Geographic and oceanographic research in Indian waters V, Mem. Asiatic Soc. of Bay of Bengal, 207-
2728 356, 1929.

2729 Shah, P., Sajeev, R., and Gopika, N.: Study of upwelling along the west coast of India - A climatological approach, J. Coast.
2730 Res., 31 , 1151–1158, doi:10.2112/JCOASTRES-D-13-00094.1, 2015.

https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-2020-486
Preprint. Discussion started: 9 February 2021

2731 Shalapyonok, A., Olson, R. J., and Shalapyonok, L. S.: Arabian sea phytoplankton during southwest and
2732 northeast Monsoons 1995: composition, size structure and biomass from individual cell properties measured by flow
2733 cytometry. Deep Sea Res. II Top. Stud. Oceanogr. 48, 1231–1261, https://doi.org/10.1016/S0967-0645(00)00137-5, 2001.

2734 Shankar, D., and Shetye, S. R.: On the dynamics of the Lakshadweep High and Low in the southeastern Arabian Sea, J.
2735 Geophys. Res, 102 , 12551–12562, doi:10.1029/97JC00465, 1997.

2736 Shankar, D., Mccreary, J. P., Han, W., and Shetye, S. R. Dynamics of the East India Coastal Current 1. Analytic solutions
2737 forced by interior Ekman pumping and local alongshore winds, J. Geophys. Res., 101, 13975–13991,
2738 doi:10.1029/96jc00559, 1996.

2739 Shankar, D., Remya, R., Anil, A., and Vijith, V.: Role of physical processes in determining the nature of fisheries in the
2740 eastern Arabian Sea, Prog. Oceanogr., 172 , 124–158, doi:10.1016/j.pocean.2018.11.006, 2019.

2741 Shankar, D., Vinayachandran, P. N., and Unnikrishnan, A. S.: The monsoon currents in the north Indian Ocean, Prog.
2742 Oceanog., 52, doi:10.1016/s0079-6611(02)00024-1, 63–120, 2002.

2743 Shenoi, S. C., Shankar, D., Gopalakrishna, V. V., and Durand, F.: Role of ocean in the genesis and annihilation of the core
2744 of the warm pool in the southeastern Arabian Sea, Mausam, 56 , 147–160, 2005.

2745 Shenoi, S. S. C. , Shankar, D, Shetye, S. R.: Differences in heat budgets of the near-surface Arabian Sea and Bay of Bengal:
2746 Implications for the summer monsoon, J. Geophys. Res., 107(C6), 3052. https://doi.org/10.1029/2000JC000679, 2002.

2747 Shenoy, D.M., Sujith, K.B.,Gauns, M.U.,Patil, S.,Sarkar, A.,Naik, H.,Narvekar, P.V.,and NaqviS.W.A.: Production of
2748 dimethylsulphide during the seasonal anoxia off Goa, Biogeochemistry, 110(1-3):47-55, doi:10.1007/s10533-012-9720-5,
2749 2012.

2750 Shenoy, L. R., Chatterjee, A., Prakash, S., and Mathew, T.: Biophysical interactions in driving the summer monsoon
2751 chlorophyll bloom off the Somalia coast. J. Geophys. Res. : Oceans, 125, e2019JC015549.
2752 https://doi.org/10.1029/2019JC015549, 2020.

2753 Shetye, S. R., and Gouveia, A. D.: Coastal circulation in the North Indian Ocean: Coastal segment (14, S-W). In: Robinson,
2754 A.R., Brink, K.H. (Eds.), The Global Coastal Ocean: Regional Studies and Syntheses, The Sea, vol. 11. John Wiley and
2755 Sons, New York, pp. 523–555 (Chapter 18), 1998.

2756 Shetye, S. R., Chandra Shenoi, S. S., Antony, M. K., and Kumar, V. K.: Monthly-mean wind stress along the coast of the
2757 north Indian Ocean, Proceedings of the Indian Academy of Sciences - Earth and Planetary Sciences, 94 , 129–137,
2758 doi:10.1007/BF02871945, 1985.

2759 Shetye, S. R., Gouveia, A. D., Shenoi, S. S. C., Sundar, D., Michael, G. S., Almeida, A. M., and Santanam, K.: Hydrography
2760 and circulation off the west coast of India during the southwest monsoon 1987, J. Mar. Res., 48 , 359–378,
2761 doi:10.1357/002224090784988809, 1990.

https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-2020-486
Preprint. Discussion started: 9 February 2021

2762 Shetye, S. R., Shenoi, S. S. C., Gouveia, A. D., Michael, G. S., Sundar, D., and Nampoothiri, G.: Wind-driven coastal
2763 upwelling along the western boundary of the Bay of Bengal during the southwest monsoon, Cont. Shelf Res., 11, 1397-
2764 1408, Doi: 10.1016/0278-4343(91)90042-5, 1991.

2765 Shetye, S.R., Gouveia, A.D., Shankar, D., Shenoi, S.S.C., Vinayachandran, P.N., Sundar, D., Michael, G.S., and
2766 Nampoothiri, G.: Hydrography and circulation in the western Bay of Bengal during the northeast monsoon, J. Geophys.
2767 Res., 101, 14011–14025, doi:10.1029/95jc03307, 1996.

2768 Shetye, S.R., Gouveia, A.D., Shenoi, S.S.C., Sundar, D., Michael, G.S., and Nampoothiri, G.: The western boundary current
2769 of the seasonal subtropical gyre in the Bay of Bengal, J. Geophys. Res., 98, 945–954, doi:10.1029/92jc02070,1993.

2770 Shetye, S.R., Shenoi, S., Gouveia, A.D., Michael, G.S., Sundar, D., and Nampoothiri, G.: Wind-driven coastal upwelling
2771 along the western boundary of Bay of Bengal during southwest monsoon, Cont. Shelf. Res., 11,1397–1408,
2772 doi:10.1016/0278-4343(91)90042-5, 1991.

2773 Shi, W., Morrison, J. M., Bo¨hm, E., and Manghnani, V.: The Oman upwelling zone during 1993, 1994 and 1995. Deep-
2774 Sea Research II, 47, 1227–1247, 2000.

2775 Sikka, D.R.: Some aspects of the large scale fluctuations of summer monsoon rainfall over India in relation to fluctuations
2776 in the planetary and regional scale circulation parameters, *Proc. Indian Acad. Sci. (Earth Planet Sci.),* 89**,** 179–195 ,
2777 https://doi.org/10.1007/BF02913749, 1980.

2778 Singh, A., Gandhi, N., and Ramesh, R.: Surplus supply of bioavailable nitrogen through N_2 fixation to primary producers in
2779 the eastern Arabian Sea during autumn, Cont. Shelf. Res., 181, 103–110, doi:10.1016/j.csr.2019.05.012, 2019.

2780 Singh, A., Gandhi, N., Ramesh, R. and Prakash, S.: Role of cyclonic eddy in enhancing primary and new production in the
2781 Bay of Bengal, Journal of Sea Research, 97, 5-13, Doi: 10.1016/j.seares.2014.12.002, 2015.

2782 Smith, R. L., and Bottero, J. S.: On upwelling in the Arabian Sea. In M. Angel (Ed.), A voyage of discover, 291–304. New
2783 York: Pergamon Press., 1977.

2784 Smith, R. L., Huyer, A., Godfrey, J. S., and Church, J. A.: The Leeuwin Current off western Australia, 1986–1987, Journal
2785 of Physical Oceanography, 21(2), 323-345, https://doi.org/10.1175/1520-0485(1991)021<0323:TLCOWA>2.0.CO;2,
2786 1991.

2787 Smith, S.L., and Codispoti, L.: Southwest Monsoon of 1979: Chemical and biological response of Somali coastal waters,
2788 Science, 209, 597-600, doi: 10.1126/science.209.4456.597, 1980

2789 Smitha, B. R., Sanjeevan, V. N., Vimalkumar, K. G., and Revichandran, C.: On the Upwelling off the southern tip and along
2790 the west coast of India, J. Coast. Res., 95–102, doi:10.2112/06-0779.1, 2008.

2791 Sprintall, J., Chong, J., Syamsudin, F., Morawitz, W., Hautala, S., Bray, N., and Wijffels, S.: Dynamics of the South Java
2792 Current in the Indo-Australian basin, Geophys. Res. Lett., 26, 2493–2496, doi:10.1029/1999GL002320, 1999.

2793 Sreeush, M. G., Valsala, V., Pentakota, S., Prasad, K. V. S. R., and Murtugudde, R.: Biological production in the Indian
2794 Ocean upwelling zones – Part 1: refined estimation via the use of a variable compensation depth in ocean carbon models,
2795 Biogeosciences, 15, 1895-1918, doi:10.5194/bg-15-1895-2018, 2018.

2796 Sridevi, B., Sarma, V. V. S. S . : A revisit to the regulation of oxygen minimum zone in the Bay of Bengal, J Earth Syst Sci
2797 129, 107, Doi: 10.1007/s12040-020-1376-2, 2020.

2798 Srinivas, B. and Sarin, M.M.: Light absorbing organic aerosols (brown carbon) over the tropical Indian Ocean: impact of
2799 biomass burning emissions, Environ. Res. Lett., 8, doi: 10.1088/1748-9326/8/4/044042, 2013.

2800 Srinivas, B., and Sarin, M. M. : Atmospheric deposition of N, P and Fe to the Northern Indian Ocean: Implications to C-
2801 and N-fixation. Science of The Total Environment, 456–457, 104–114. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.scitotenv.2013.03.068,
2802 2013.

2803 Srokosz, M. A., and Quartly, G. D.: The Madagascar Bloom: A serendipitous study, J. Geophys. Res. Oceans, 118, 14–25,
2804 doi:10.1029/2012JC008339, 2013.

2805 Strzelecki, J., and Koslow, J.: Mesoplankton, In Strategic Research Fund for the Marine Environment Final Report (Vol. 2),
2806 88-102, CSIRO Australia, 2006.

2807 Strzelecki, J., Koslow, J. A., and Waite, A.: Comparison of mesozooplankton communities from a pair of warm- and cold-
2808 core eddies off the coast of Western Australia, Deep Sea Res. Part II: Top. Stud. Oceanogr., 54(8), 1103-1112,
2809 doi:10.1016/j.dsr2.2007.02.004, 2007

2810 Sudheesh, V., Gupta, G. V. M., and Naqvi, S. W. A.: Massive Methane Loss During Seasonal Hypoxia/Anoxia in the
2811 Nearshore Waters of Southeastern Arabian Sea,*Front. Mar. Sci.*, *7*. https://doi.org/10.3389/fmars.2020.00324, 2020

2812 Sudheesh, V., Gupta, G.V.M., Sudharma, K., Naik, H., Shenoy, D., Sudhakar, M., and Naqvi, S.: Upwelling intensity
2813 modulates N_2O concentrations over the western Indian shelf, J. Geophys. Res. Oceans, 121, 8551–8565,
2814 doi:10.1002/2016JC012166, 2016.

2815 Sudheesh, V.: Influence of Upwelling on Seasonal Hypoxia/Anoxia and Greenhouse Gases along the Southwestern
2816 Continental Shelf of India, Ph.D Thesis, Cochin University of Science and Technology, Cochin,
2817 http://hdl.handle.net/10603/256272 , 2018

https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-2020-486
Preprint. Discussion started: 9 February 2021

2818 Susanto, R. D., and Marra, J.: Effect of the 1997/98 El Nino on chlorophyll a variability along the southern coasts of Java
2819 and Sumatra, Oceanography, 18(4), 124-127, doi:10.5670/oceanog.2005.13, 2005.

2820 Susanto, R. D., Gordon, A. L., and Zheng, Q.: Upwelling along the coasts of Java and Sumatra and its relation to ENSO,
2821 Geophys. Res. Lettr., 28, 1599-1602, doi:10.1029/2000GL011844, 2001.

2822 Sutton, A. L., and Beckley, L. E.: Influence of the Leeuwin Current on the epipelagic euphausiid assemblages of the south-
2823 east Indian Ocean, Hydrobiologia, 779(1), 193-207, doi:10.1007/s10750-016-2814-7, 2016.

2824 Sverdrup, H.U.: On the evaporation from the oceans, J. Mar. Res. 1, 3-14, 1937.

2825 Swallow J. C. and Fieux, M.: Historical evidence for two gyres in the Somali Current. Journal of Marine Research, 40,
2826 suppl, 747-755, 1982.

2827 Swallow, J. C., and Bruce, J. C.: Current measurements off the Somali coast during the southwest monsoon of 1964, Deep
2828 Sea Research, 13, 861–888, https://doi.org/10.1016/0011-7471(76)90908-6, 1966.

2829 Swallow, J. C., Molinari, R. L., Bruce, J. G., Brown, O. B., and Evans, R. H.: Development of near-surface flow pattern and
2830 water mass distribution in the Somali Basin in response to the southwest monsoon of 1979, Journal of Physical
2831 Oceanography, 13, 1398–1415, https://doi.org/10.1175/1520-0485(1983)013<1398:DONSFP>2.0.CO;2, 1983.

2832 Swallow, J.C. Schott, F., and Fieux, M.: Structure and transport of the East African Coastal Current. J. Geophys. Res.
2833 Atmospheres 962, C12, 22245-22257, doi:10.1029/91JC01942, 1991.

2834 Swart, V. P., Largier, J. L.: Thermal structure of Agulhas Bank water. South African Journal of Marine Science, 5:1, 243-
2835 252, doi: 10.2989/025776187784522153, 1987.

2836 Takahashi, T., Sutherland, S.C.,Chipman, D.W.,Goddard, J.G.,Ho, C.,Newberger, T.,Sweeney,C.,and Munro, D.R.:
2837 Climatological distributions of pH, pCO_2, total CO_2, alkalinity, and $CaCO_3$ saturation in the global surface ocean, and
2838 temporal changes at selected locations, Mar. Chem.,164:95-125, https://doi.org/10.1016/j.marchem.2014.06.004, 2014.

2839 Taylor, J., and Pearce, A.: Ningaloo Reef currents: implications for coral spawn dispersal, zooplankton and whale shark
2840 abundance, J R Soc West Aus, 82(2), 57-65, 1999.

2841 Ternon, J.-F., Bach, P., Barlow, R., Huggett, J., Jaquemet, S., Marsac, F., Menard, F., Penven, P., Potier, M., and Roberts,
2842 M.: The Mozambique Channel: from physics to upper trophic levels, Deep-Sea Res. II 100, 1–9,
2843 doi:10.1016/j.dsr2.2013.10.012, 2014.

2844 Tew Kai, E., and Marsac, F.: Influence of mesoscale eddies on spatial structuring of top predators' communities in the
2845 Mozambique Channel, Prog. Oceanogr 86, 214–223, doi:10.1016/j.pocean.2010.04.010, 2010.

https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-2020-486
Preprint. Discussion started: 9 February 2021

2846 Tew-Kai, E., and Marsac, F.: Patterns of variability of sea surface chlorophyll in the Mozambique Channel: a quantitative
2847 approach, J. Mar. Syst. 77, 77–88, doi:10.1016/j.jmarsys.2008.11.007, 2009.

2848 Thompson, P. A., Pesant, S., and Waite, A. M.: Contrasting the vertical differences in the phytoplankton biology of a dipole
2849 pair of eddies in the south-eastern Indian Ocean, Deep Sea Res. Part II: Top. Stud. Oceanogr., 54(8), 1003-1028,
2850 doi:10.1016/j.dsr2.2006.12.009, 2007.

2851 Thompson, P., Wild-Allen, K., Lourey, M., Rousseaux, C., Waite, A., Feng, M., and Beckley, L. E.: Nutrients in an
2852 oligotrophic boundary current: evidence of a new role for the Leeuwin Current, Prog. Oceanogr., 91(4), 345-359,
2853 doi:10.1016/j.pocean.2011.02.011, 2011.

2854 Thompson, R. O.R.Y., and Veronis, G.: Poleward boundary current off Western Australia, Mar. Freshw. Res., 34(1), 173-
2855 185, doi:10.1071/MF9830173, 1983 .

2856 Thompson, R. O.R.Y.: Observations of the Leeuwin Current off Western Australia, J. Phys. Oceanogr., 14(3), 623-628,
2857 doi:10.1175/1520-0485(1984)014<0623:ootlco>2.0.co;2, 1984.

2858 Thompson, R.O.R.Y.: Continental-shelf-scale model of the Leeuwin Current, J. Mar. Res., 45(4), 813-827,
2859 doi:10.1357/002224087788327190, 1987.

2860 Thushara, V., Vinayachandran, P. N. M., Matthews, A. J., Webber, B. G. M., and Queste, B. Y. : Vertical distribution of
2861 chlorophyll in dynamically distinct regions of the southern Bay of Bengal, Biogeosciences, 16(7), 1447–1468.
2862 https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-16-1447-2019, 2019.

2863 Thushara,V. and Vinayachandran, P.N. : Formation of summer phytoplankton bloom in the northwestern Bay of Bengal in
2864 a coupled physical-ecosystem model, J. Geophys. Res. Oceans, 121 (12), 8535-8550, Doi: 10.1002/2016JC011987, 2016.

2865 Tomczak, M., and Godfrey, J.S.: Regional Oceanography: An Introduction. Pergamon Press, Oxford, 1994.

2866 Tranter, D.J. and Newell, B. S.: Enrichment experiments in the Indian Ocean, Deep-Sea Res. Oceanogr. Abstr., 10(1-2), 1-
2867 9, doi:10.1016/0011-7471(63)90173-6, 1962.

2868 Tripathi, N., Sahu, L. K., Singh, A., Yadav, R., and Karati, K. K.: High levels of isoprene in the marine boundary layer of
2869 Arabian Sea during spring inter-monsoon: Role of phytoplankton bloom, ACS Earth and Space Chemistry,
2870 doi:10.1021/acsearthspacechem.9b00325, 2020.

https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-2020-486
Preprint. Discussion started: 9 February 2021

2871 Tripathi, N., Sahu, L. K., Singh, A., Yadav, R., Patel, A., Patel, K., andMeenu, P.: Elevated levels of biogenic non-methane
2872 hydrocarbons in the marine boundary layer of the Arabian Sea during the inter-monsoon, *J. Geophys. Res. Atmos.*,
2873 https://doi.org/10.1029/2020JD032869, 2020

2874 Tsugawa, M., and Hasumi, H.: Generation and growth mechanism of the Natal pulse. J. Phys. Oceanogr., 40, 1597–1612,
2875 doi:10.1175/2010JPO4347.1, 2010.

2876 Turpie J. K, Beckley, L. E., Katua, S. M.: Biogeography and the selection of priority areas for the conservation of South
2877 African coastal fishes, Biol Conserv 92: 59–72, https://doi.org/10.1016/S0006-3207(99)00063-4, 2000.

2878 Twomey, L. J., Waite, A. M., Pez, V., and Pattiaratchi, C. B.: Variability in nitrogen uptake and fixation in the oligotrophic
2879 waters off the south west coast of Australia, Deep Sea Res. Part II: Top. Stud. Oceanogr., 54(8), 925-942.
2880 doi:10.1016/j.dsr2.2006.10.001, 2007

2881 Valsala, V. and Maksyutov, S.: A short surface pathway of the subsurface Indonesian throughflow water from the Java coast
2882 associated with upwelling, Ekman transport, and subduction, Int. J. Oceanogr., 540783, 1-15, doi:10.1155/2010/540783,
2883 2010.

2884 Van Leeuwen, P. J., de Ruijter, W. P. N., and Lutjeharms, J. R. E.: Natal pulses and the formation of Agulhas Rings, J.
2885 Geophys. Res., 105, 6425-6436, https://doi.org/10.1029/1999JC900196, 2000.

2886 Varadachari, V. V. R.: On the process of upwelling and sinking on the east coast of India, Os. Univ. Press, Inst. of Oceanogr.
2887 Sci., Wormley, England, Prof. Mahadevan Shastiabdapurti commemoration Vol:1–27, 1961.

2888 Varela, R., Álvarez, I., Santos, F., deCastro, M., and Gómez-Gesteira, M.: Has upwelling strengthened along worldwide
2889 coasts over 1982-2010? Scientific Reports, 5, 10016, doi:10.1038/srep10016, 2015.

2890 Varela, R., Santos, F., Gómez-Gesteira, M., Álvarez, I., Costoya, X., and Días, J. M.: Influence of coastal upwelling on SST
2891 trends along the south coast of Java, PLoS ONE, 11(9), e0162122, doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0162122, 2016.

2892 Veldhuis, M. J., Kraay, G. W., Van Bleijswijk, J. D., and Baars, M. A.: Seasonal and spatial variability in phytoplankton
2893 biomass, productivity and growth in the northwestern Indian Ocean: The southwest and northeast monsoon, 1992–1993.
2894 Deep Sea Research Part I: Oceanographic Research Papers, 44(3), 425–449, https://doi.org/10.1016/S0967-0637(96)00116-
2895 1, 1997.

2896 Vialard, J., Duvel, J. P., McPhaden, M. J., Bouruet-Aubertot, P., Ward, B., Key, E., Bourras, D., Weller, R., Minnett, P.,
2897 Weill, A., Cassou, C., Eymard, L., Fristedt, T., Basdevant, C., Dandonneau, Y., Duteil, O., Izumo, T., de Boyer Montégut,
2898 C., Masson, S., … Kennan, S. : Cirene: Air—Sea Interactions in the Seychelles—Chagos Thermocline Ridge Region. Bull.
2899 Amer. Meteor Soc., 90(1), 45–62. https://doi.org/10.1175/2008BAMS2499.1, 2009.

2900 Vialard, J., Shenoi, S. S. C., McCreary, J. P., Shankar, D., Durand, F., Fernando, V., and Shetye, S. R.: Intraseasonal
2901 response of the northern Indian Ocean coastal waveguide to the Madden-Julian Oscillation, Geophys. Res. Lett., 36,
2902 doi:10.1029/2009GL038450, 2009.

2903 Vic, C., Capet, X., Roullet, G., and Carton, X.: Western boundary upwelling dynamics off Oman. Ocean Dynamics, 67(5),
2904 585–595. https:// doi.org/10.1007/s10236-017-1044-5, 2017.

2905 Vidya, P. J., S. Das, M. and Murali, R. : Contrasting Chl-*a* responses to the tropical cyclones Thane and Phailin in the Bay
2906 of Bengal, *J. Mar. Syst.*, DOI: 10.1016/j.jmarsys.2016.10.001, 2017.

2907 Vinayachandran P. N., P. Chauhan, M. Mohan and S. Nayak: Biological response of the sea around Sri Lanka to summer
2908 monsoon, ***Geophys. Res. Lett.,*** 31, doi:10.1029 /2003GL018533, 2004.

2909 Vinayachandran, P. N. : Impact of Physical Processes on Chlorophyll Distribution in the Bay of Bengal, 71– 86,
2910 AGU, Washington, D. C., doi:10.1029/2008GM000705, 2009.

2911 Vinayachandran, P. N., Kagimoto, T., Masumoto, Y., Chauhan, P., Nayak, S. R., and Yamagata, T.:, Bifurcation of the
2912 East India Coastal Current east of Sri Lanka, Geophys. Res. Lett., 32(L15606), doi:10.1029/2005GL022864, 2005.

2913 Vinayachandran, P. N., & Saji, N. H.: Mechanisms of South Indian Ocean intraseasonal cooling, Geophys. Res. Lett.,
2914 35(23), L23607, https://doi.org/10.1029/2008GL035733, 2008.

2915 Vinayachandran, P. N., and Shetye, S. R.: The warm pool in the Indian Ocean, Proceedings of the Indian Academy of
2916 Sciences - Earth and Planetary Sciences, 100 , 165–175. doi:10.1007/BF02839431, 1991.

2917 Vinayachandran, P. N., and Yamagata, T.: Monsoon Response of the Sea around Sri Lanka: Generation of Thermal
2918 Domesand Anticyclonic Vortices, Journal of Physical Oceanography, 28(10), 1946–1960. https://doi.org/10.1175/1520-
2919 0485(1998)028<1946:MROTSA>2.0.CO;2, 1998.

2920 Vinayachandran, P. N., Das, U., Shankar, D., Jahfer, S., Behara, A., Nair, T. M. B., & Bhat, G. S.: Maintenance of the
2921 southern Bay of Bengal cold pool, Deep Sea Research Part II: Topical Studies in Oceanography, 179, 104624.
2922 https://doi.org/10.1016/j.dsr2.2019.07.012, 2010.

2923 Vinayachandran, P. N., Masumoto, Y., Mikawa, T., and Yamagata, T. : Intrusion of the Southwest Monsoon Current into
2924 the Bay of Bengal J. Geophys. Res. : Oceans, 104(C5), 11077–11085. https://doi.org/10.1029/1999JC900035, 1999.

2925 Vinayachandran, P. N., Matthews, A. J., Kumar, K. V., Sanchez-Franks, A., Thushara, V., George, J., Vijith, V., Webber,
2926 B. G. M., Queste, B. Y., Roy, R., Sarkar, A., Baranowski, D. B., Bhat, G. S., Klingaman, N. P., Peatman, S. C., Parida, C.,

https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-2020-486
Preprint. Discussion started: 9 February 2021

2927 Heywood, K. J., Hall, R., King, B., … Joshi, M: BoBBLE: Ocean–Atmosphere Interaction and Its Impact on the South
2928 Asian Monsoon, Bull. Am. Meteorol. Soc., 99(8), 1569–1587. https://doi.org/10.1175/BAMS-D-16-0230.1, 2018.

2929 Vinayachandran, P. N., McCreary Jr., J.P, Hood, .R. R and. Kohler, K.E. :A numerical investigation of the phytoplankton
2930 bloom in the Bay of Bengal during Northeast Monsoon, *J. Geophys. Res.*, **110 (**C12001), doi:10.1029/2005JC002966, 2005.

2931 Vinayachandran, P. N., Shankar, D., Kurian, J., Durand, F., and Shenoi, S. S. C.: Arabian Sea Mini warmp pool and the
2932 monsoon onset vortex, Current Science, 93(2), 203-214, 2007.

2933 Vinayachandran, P. N., Shetye, S. R., Sengupta, D., and Gadgil, S.: Forcing mechanisms of the Bay of Bengal circulation,
2934 Current Science, 71:753–763, 1996.

2935 Vinayachandran, P.N., Chauhan, P., Mohan, M., Nayak, S.: Biological response of the sea around Sri Lanka to summer
2936 monsoon, Geophys. Res. Lett. 31, doi:10.1029/2003GL018533, 2004.

2937 Vinayachandran, P.N., Murty, V.S.N., Ramesh Babu, V.: Observations of barrier layer formation in the Bay of Bengal
2938 during summer monsoon, Journal of Geophyscal Research-Oceans, doi: 10.1029/2001JC000831, 2002.

2939 Vinaychandran, P.N. and Mathew, S.: Phytoplakton bloom in the Bay of Bengal during the northeast monsoon and its
2940 intensification by cyclones, Geophy. Res. Lett., doi: 10.1029/2002GL016717, 2003.

2941 Waite, A. M., Beckley, L. E., Guidi, L., Landrum, J. P., Holliday, D., Montoya, J., Paterson, H., Feng, M., Thompson, P.
2942 A., & Raes, E. J.: Cross-shelf transport, oxygen depletion, and nitrate release within a forming mesoscale eddy in the eastern
2943 Indian Ocean, Limnol. Oceanogr., 61(1), 103-121, doi:10.1002/lno.10218, 2016.

2944 Waite, A. M., Raes, E., Beckley, L. E., Thompson, P. A., Griffin, D., Saunders, M., Säwström, C., O'Rorke, R., Wang, M.,
2945 Landrum, J. P. & Jeffs, A.: Production and ecosystem structure in cold-core vs. warm-core eddies: Implications for the
2946 zooplankton isoscape and rock lobster larvae, Limnol. Oceanogr., 64(6), 2405-2423, doi:10.1002/lno.11192, 2019.

2947 Waite, A. M., Rossi, V., Roughan, M., Tilbrook, B., Thompson, P. A., Feng, M., Wyatt, A. S. J., and Raes, E. J.: Formation
2948 and maintenance of high-nitrate, low pH layers in the eastern Indian Ocean and the role of nitrogen fixation, Biogeosciences,
2949 10(8), 5691–5702, doi:10.5194/bg-10-5691-2013, 2013.

2950 Waite, A., Muhling, B. A., Holl, C. M., Beckley, L. E., Montoya, J. P., Strzelecki, J., Thompson, P. A. & Pesant, S. C.: Food
2951 web structure in two counter-rotating eddies based on δ15N and δ13C isotopic analyses, Deep-Sea Res. Part 2 Top. Stud.
2952 Oceanogr., 54(8), 1055-1075. doi:10.1016/j.dsr2.2006.12.010, 2007a.

https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-2020-486
Preprint. Discussion started: 9 February 2021

2953 Waite, A., Thompson, P. A., Pesant, S. C., Feng, M., Beckley, L. E., Domingues, C. M., Gaughan, D., Hanson, C., Holl, C.
2954 M., Koslow, T., Meuleners, M., Montoya, J. P., Moore, T., Muhling, B. A., Paterson, H., Rennie, S., Strzelecki, J. and
2955 Twomey, L.: The Leeuwin Current and its eddies: An introductory overview, Deep Sea Res. Part II Top. Stud. Oceanogr.,
2956 54(8), 789-796, doi:10.1016/j.dsr2.2006.12.008, 2007b.

2957 Walker, N. D., : Satellite observations of the Agulhas Current and episodic upwelling south of Africa. Deep-Sea Res., 33A,
2958 1083–1106, doi:10.1016/0198-0149(86)90032-4, 1986.

2959 Wallen, I.E. The International Indian Ocean Expedition: A Status Report. Journal of the Washington Academy of Sciences,
2960 54, 3, March 1964, pp. 45-53, https://www.jstor.org/stable/24535159, 1964.

2961 Wang, Y., and McPhaden, M. J.: Seasonal cycle of cross-equatorial flow in the central Indian Ocean. J. Geophys. Res. :
2962 Oceans, 122(5), 3817–3827. https://doi.org/10.1002/2016JC012537, 2017.

2963 Warren, B. A.: Medieval Arab references to the seasonally reversing currents of the north Indian Ocean, Deep-Sea Research,
2964 13, 167–171, https://doi.org/10.1016/0011-7471(66)91097-7, 1966.

2965 Warren, B. A.: The shallow oxygen minimum of the South Indian Ocean, Deep Sea Res. Part I Oceanogr. Res. Pap., 28(8),
2966 859-864, doi:10.1016/S0198-0149(81)80005-2, 1981.

2967 Weaver, A. J., and Middleton, J. H.: On the dynamics of the Leeuwin Current, J. Phys. Oceanogr., 19(5), 626-648,
2968 doi:10.1175/1520-0485(1989)019<0626:otdotl>2.0.co;2, 1989.

2969 Webber, B. G. M., Matthews, A. J., Vinayachandran, P. N., Neema, C. P., Sanchez-Franks, A., Vijith, V., Amol, P., &
2970 Baranowski, D. B. : The Dynamics of the Southwest Monsoon Current in 2016 from High-Resolution In Situ Observations
2971 and Models, Journal of Physical Oceanography, 48(10), 2259–2282. https://doi.org/10.1175/JPO-D-17-0215.1, 2018.

2972 Webster, P.J., Moore, A.M., Loschnigg, J.P., and Leben, R.R.: Coupled ocean-atmosphere dynamics in the Indian Ocean
2973 during 1997-98, Nature., 401:356–360, doi:10.1038/43848,1999.

2974 Wei, X., Liao, X., Zhan, H. and Liu, H.: Estimates of potential new production in the Java-Sumatra upwelling system, Chin.
2975 J. Oceanol. Limnol., 30, 1063-1067, doi:10.1007/s00343-012-1281-x, 2012.

2976 Weimerskirch, H., Le Corre, M., Jaquemet, S., Potier, M., and Marsac, F.: Foraging strategy of a top predator in tropical
2977 waters: great frigate birds in the Mozambique Channel, Mar. Ecol. Prog. Ser., 275, 297–308, doi:10.3354/meps275297,
2978 2004.

2979 Weller, E., Holliday, D., Feng, M., Beckley, L., and Thompson, P.: A continental shelf scale examination of the Leeuwin
2980 Current off Western Australia during the austral autumn–winter, Cont Shelf Res., 31(17), 1858-1868,
2981 doi:10.1016/j.csr.2011.08.008, 2011.

https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-2020-486
Preprint. Discussion started: 9 February 2021

2982 Wiggert, J., Hood, R., Banse, K., and Kindle, J.: Monsoon-driven biogeochemical processes in the Arabian Sea, Prog.
2983 Oceanogr., 65(2–4), 176–213, doi:10.1016/j.pocean.2005.03.008, 2005.

2984 Wiggert, J.D., and Murtugudde, R.G.: The sensitivity of the Southwest Monsoon phytoplankton bloom to variations in
2985 aeolian iron deposition over the Arabian Sea. J. Geophys. Res. 112. http://dx.doi.org/10.1029/2006JC003514, 2007.

2986 Wiggert, J.D., Murtugudde, R.G. and Christian, J.R.: Annual ecosystem variability in the tropical Indian Ocean: results of
2987 a coupled bio-physical ocean general circulation model. Deep-Sea Res. II 53, 644–676, 2006.

2988 Wilson, S., Carleton, J., and Meekan, M.: Spatial and temporal patterns in the distribution and abundance of
2989 macrozooplankton on the southern North West Shelf, Western Australia, Estuar. Coast. Shelf Sci., 56(5-6), 897-908,
2990 doi:10.1016/S0272-7714(02)00285-8, 2003.

2991 Wirth, A., Willebrand, J., and Schott, F.: Variability of the Great Whirl from observations and models, Deep-Sea Res.
2992 Pt. II, 49,1279–1295, https://doi.org/10.1016/S0967-0645(01)00165-5, 2002.

2993 Woo, M., and Pattiaratchi, C.: Hydrography and water masses off the western Australian coast, Deep Sea Res. Part I
2994 Oceanogr. Res. Pap., 55(9), 1090-1104, doi:10.1016/j.dsr.2008.05.005, 2008.

2995 Woo, M., Pattiaratchi, C., and Schroeder, W.: Dynamics of the Ningaloo Current off Point Cloates, Western Australia, Mar.
2996 Freshw. Res., 57(3), 291-301, doi:10.1071/mf05106, 2006a.

2997 Woo, M., Pattiaratchi, C., and Schroeder, W.: Summer surface circulation along the Gascoyne continental shelf, Western
2998 Australia, Cont Shelf Res., 26(1), 132-152, doi:10.1016/j.csr.2005.07.007, 2006b.

2999 Wright, J. J., Konwar, K. M., and Hallam, S. J.:Microbial ecology of expanding oxygen minimum zones,Nature Publishing
3000 Group, *10*(6), 381–394, https://doi.org/10.1038/nrmicro2778, 2012.

3001 Wyrtki, K. Physical oceanography of the Indian Ocean. Pp. 18–36 in B. Zeitzschel, ed. The biology of the Indian Ocean.
3002 Springer-Verlag, New York, 1973.

3003 Wyrtki, K.: The upwelling in the region between Java and Australia during the South-East monsoon, Aust. J. Mar. Freshw.
3004 Res., 13, 217-225, doi:10.1071/MF9620217, 1962.

3005 Wyrtki. K.: Oceanographic Atlas of the International Indian Ocean Expedition, Natl. Sci. Found., Washington, D. C.., 531,
3006 1971.

3007 Xie, S.-P., Annamalai, H., Schott, F. A., and McCreary Jr. J.P.: Structure and mechanism of South Indian Ocean climate
3008 variability, *J.Clim.*, 15, 864–878, https://doi.org/10.1175/1520-0442(2002)015<0864:SAMOSI>2.0.CO;2, 2002.

https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-2020-486
Preprint. Discussion started: 9 February 2021

3009 Xu, J., Lowe, R. J., Ivey, G. N., Pattiaratchi, C., Jones, N. L., and Brinkman, R.: Dynamics of the Wei summer shelf
3010 circulation and transient upwelling off Ningaloo Reef, Western Australia, J. Geophys. Res. Oceans, 118(3), 1099-1125,
3011 doi:10.1002/jgrc.20098, 2013.

3012 Xue, L., Wang, H., Jiang, L.-Q., Cai, W.-J., Wei, Q., Song, H.,Kuswardani, R. T. D., Pranowo, W. S., Beck, B., Liu, L. and
3013 Yu, W.: Aragonite saturation state in a monsoonal upwelling system off Java, Indonesia, J. Marine Systems, 153, 10–17,
3014 doi:10.1016/j.jmarsys.2015.08.003, 2016.

3015 Yamagata, T., Behera, S. K., Luo, J.-J., Masson, S., Jury, M. R., & Rao, S. A. : Coupled Ocean-Atmosphere Variability in
3016 the Tropical Indian Ocean, Geophysical Monograph Series, 147, 189–211, https://doi.org/10.1029/147GM12, 2004.

3017 Yokoi, T., Tozuka, T., and Yamagata, T.: Seasonal Variations of the Seychelles Dome Simulated in the CMIP3 Models.
3018 Journal of Physical Oceanography, 39(2), 449–457, https://doi.org/10.1175/2008JPO3914.1, 2008.

3019 Yu, W., Hood, R., D'Adamo, N., McPhaden, M. et.al., :Eastern Indian Ocean upwelling Research Initiative (EIOURI), The
3020 EIOURI Science Plan, ESSO - Indian National Centre for Ocean Information Services (INCOIS), Hyderabad, India, 49pp,
3021 2018.

3022 Zavala-Garay, J., Theiss, J., Moulton, M., Walsh C., van Woesik R., Mayorga-Adame, C.G., García-Reyes, M., Mukaka,
3023 D.S., Whilden K., and Shaghude, Y.W.: On the dynamics of the Zanzibar Channel. J. Geophys. Res. Oceans, 120, 6091–
3024 6113, doi:10.1002/2015JC010879, 2015.
3025
3026
3027
3028
3029
3030
3031
3032
3033
3034
3035
3036
3037
3038
3039

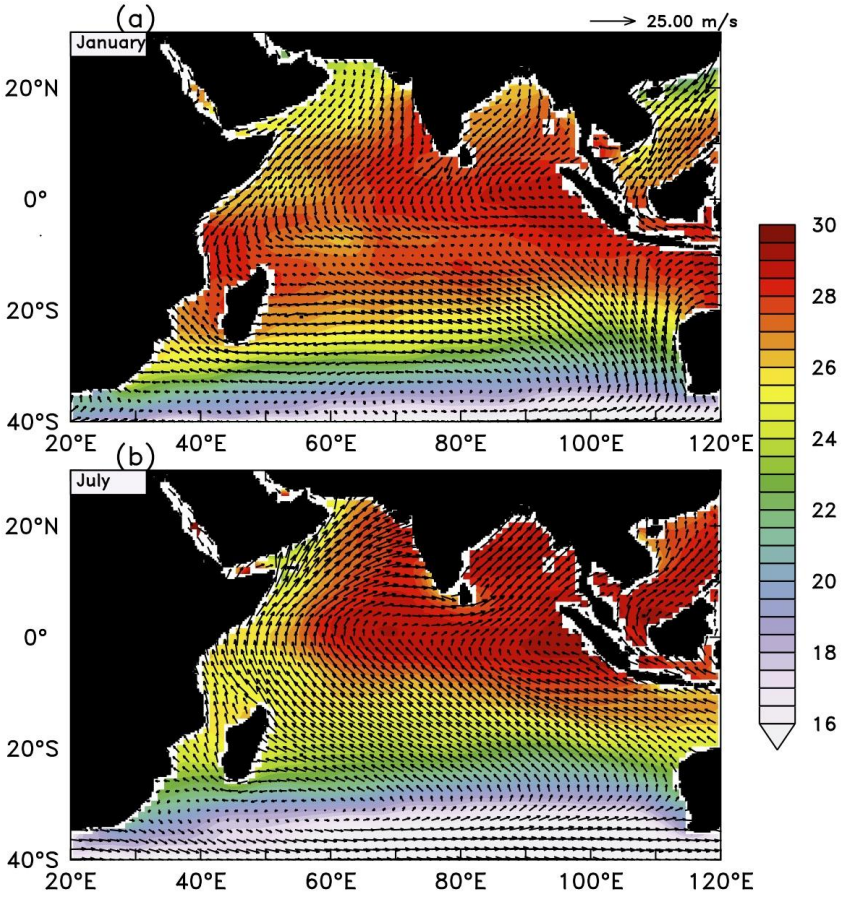
https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-2020-486
Preprint. Discussion started: 9 February 2021

3040

3041

3042

3043 **Figures**



3044

3045 **Figure 1.** Climatological (Locarnini, 2018) SST averaged from surface to 50 m depth (shaded) and winds (vectors m s
3046 $^{-1}$), data from QuikSCAT (http://apdrc.soest.hawaii.edu.) for the months of (a) January and (b) July. The scale for SST is
3047 given to the right of each panel and the scale vector for wind speed is given at the top of each panel.

https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-2020-486
Preprint. Discussion started: 9 February 2021

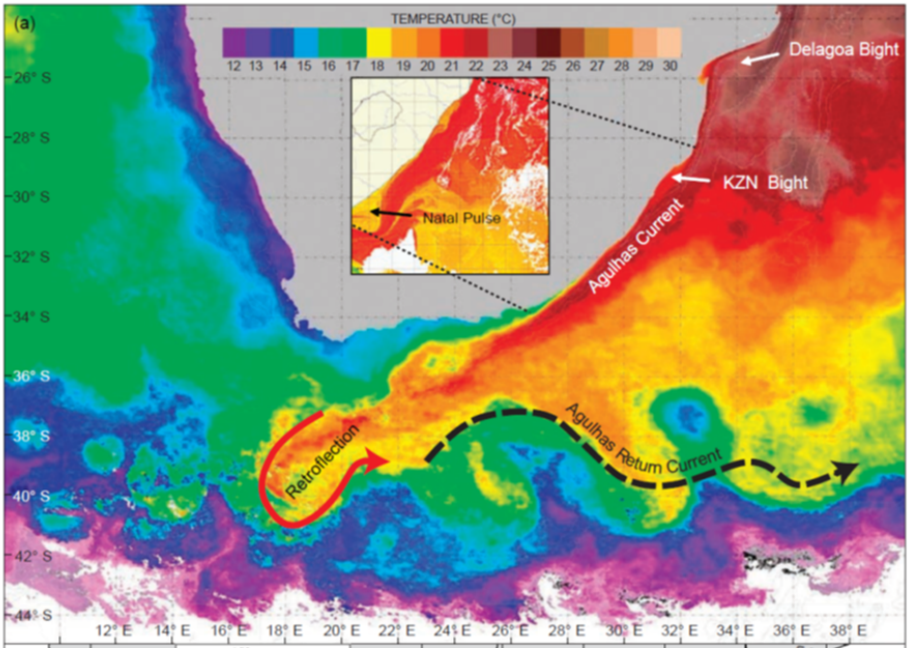


Figure 2. SST image highlighting the Agulhas Current flowing along the east coast of South Africa. PE = Port Elizabeth, PA = Port Alfred. Insert highlights a south-westward propagating Natal pulse (a singular meander in the trajectory) which has a cold core. The shelf on the east coast is narrow with a steep continental slope. Exceptions are the KZN Bight and the Agulhas Bank.

https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-2020-486
Preprint. Discussion started: 9 February 2021

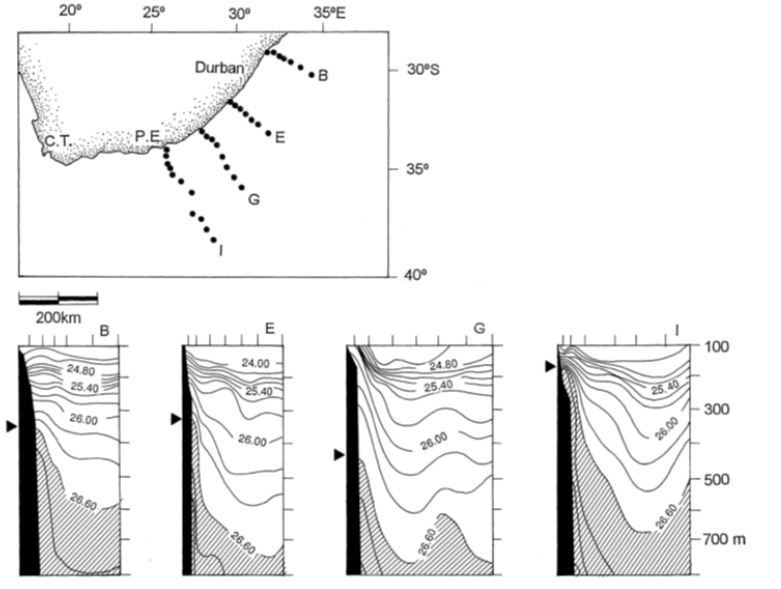


Figure 3. Sections across the Agulhas Current, showing sigma-t values obtained during March 1969 (after Harris and Van Foreest, 1978). All show water with a density greater than 26.60 upwelled along the inshore edge of the Agulhas Current.

https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-2020-486
Preprint. Discussion started: 9 February 2021

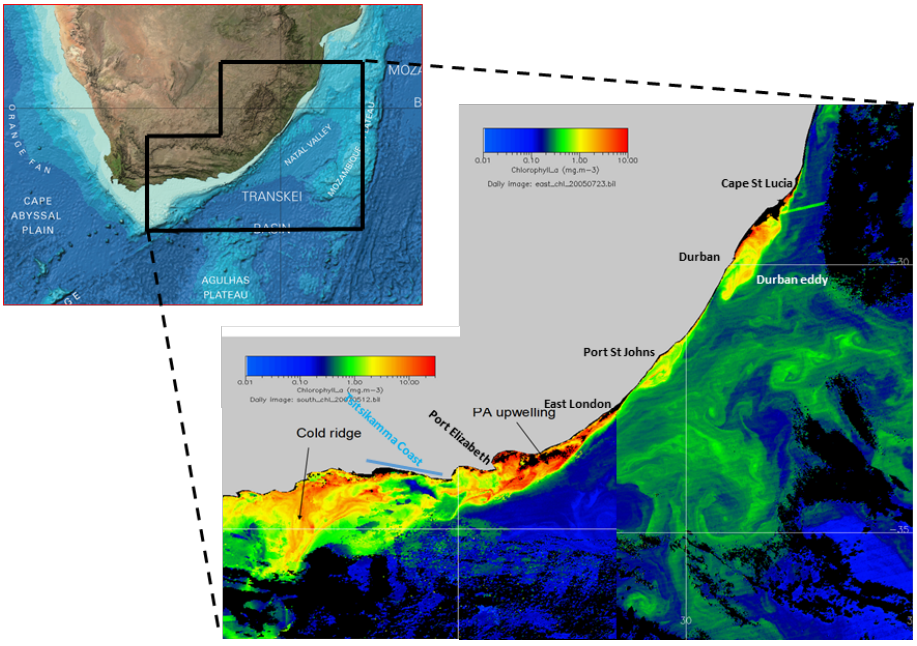


Figure 4. A composite chlorophyll satellite image chosen to highlight the main productivity features commonly found on the inshore edge of the Agulhas Current. Note the different chlorophyll scales applicable to the LHS and RHS parts of the composite. Highlighted are the cold ridge on the central Agulhas Bank (AB), Port Alfred upwelling extending onto the eastern AB, the Durban (break-away) eddy with a similar feature passing Port St Johns where a semi-permanent smaller cyclonic feature often exists.

https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-2020-486
Preprint. Discussion started: 9 February 2021

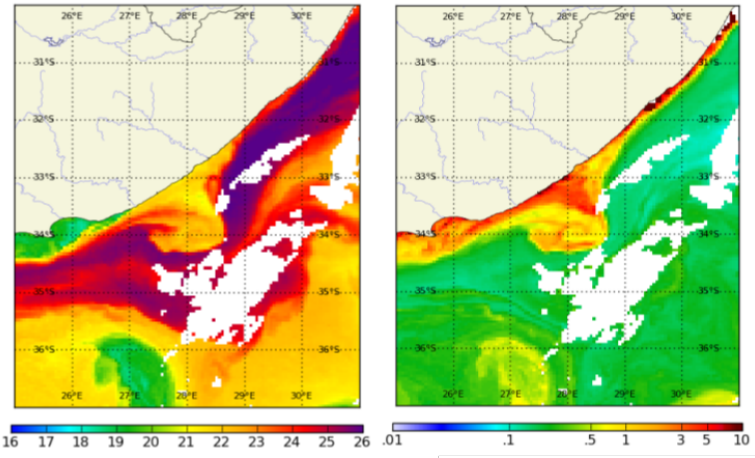
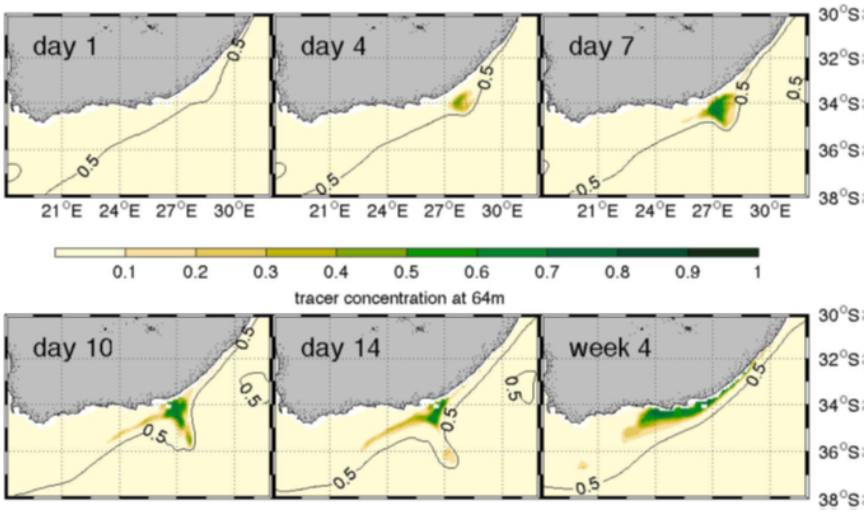


Figure 5. Satellite SST (LHS) and chlorophyll-a (RHS) images of a Natal pulse on 2 April 2010 off the narrow Transkei shelf. Note the high levels of chl-a on the eastern side of the cyclone (meander) which protrude of the shelf.

https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-2020-486
Preprint. Discussion started: 9 February 2021

Biogeosciences
Discussions
Open Access
EGU

3114



3115
3116
3117
3118
3119
3120
3121
3122
3123
3124
3125
3126
3127
3128
3129
3130
3131
3132

Figure 6. Tracer concentration at 64 m in a AGU-HYCOM to reveal shelf edge upwelling. Tracers were initialized in the Agulhas Current below 400 m over a 6-week period during a meander event in 2001 and used as a proxy for upwelling. The 0.5-m sea level contour is highlighted to show the inshore edge of the current as the meander propagates along the coast (after Malan et al., 2018).

https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-2020-486
Preprint. Discussion started: 9 February 2021

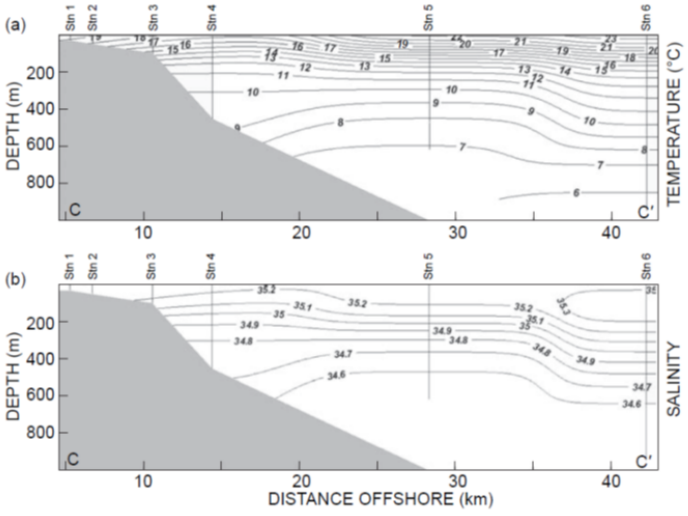


Figure 7. Vertical sections of CTD data collected along a trans-shelf transect off Port St Johns to a depth of 1 000 m near Port St Johns on 4 May 2005 (see Roberts et al., 2010). Both temperature (a) and salinity (b) show slope upwelling with a surface temperature of 16 °C near Station 4 in the centre of the Port St Johns–Waterfall Bluff cyclonic eddy. Graphic after Roberts et al. (2010).

https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-2020-486
Preprint. Discussion started: 9 February 2021

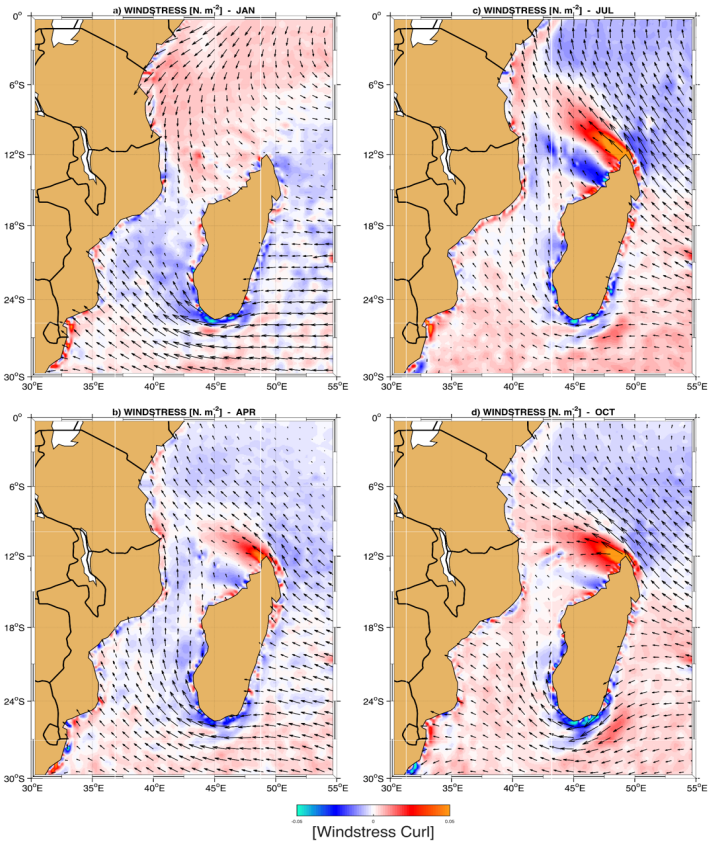


Figure 8. Climatological monthly means of wind stress (vectors) and wind stress curl (shading) during different seasons. Austral summer (a), fall (b), winter (c) and spring (d). Negative (blue) and positive (red) wind stress curl depict favourable upwelling and downwelling areas respectively. The data was extracted from Scatterometer Climatology of Ocean Winds (SCOW), described by Risien and Chelton (2008); mapped globally with a spatial grid resolution of 1/4◦ × 1/4◦, estimated from 10 years' period, ranging between September 1999 and August 2009, measured by NASA Quick Scatterometer (QuikSCAT).

https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-2020-486
Preprint. Discussion started: 9 February 2021

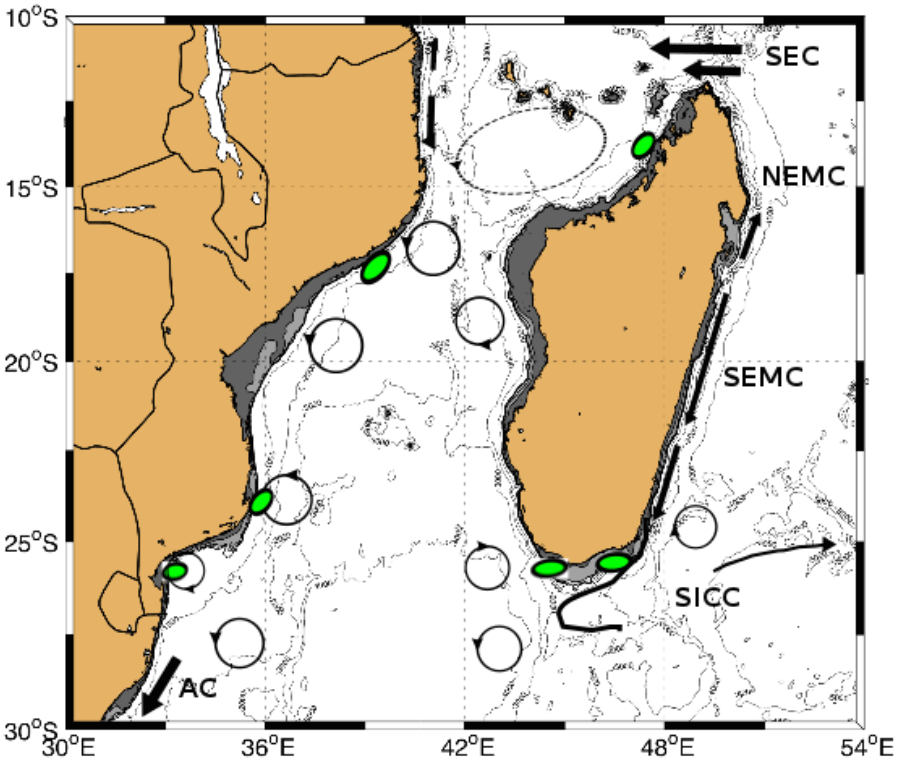
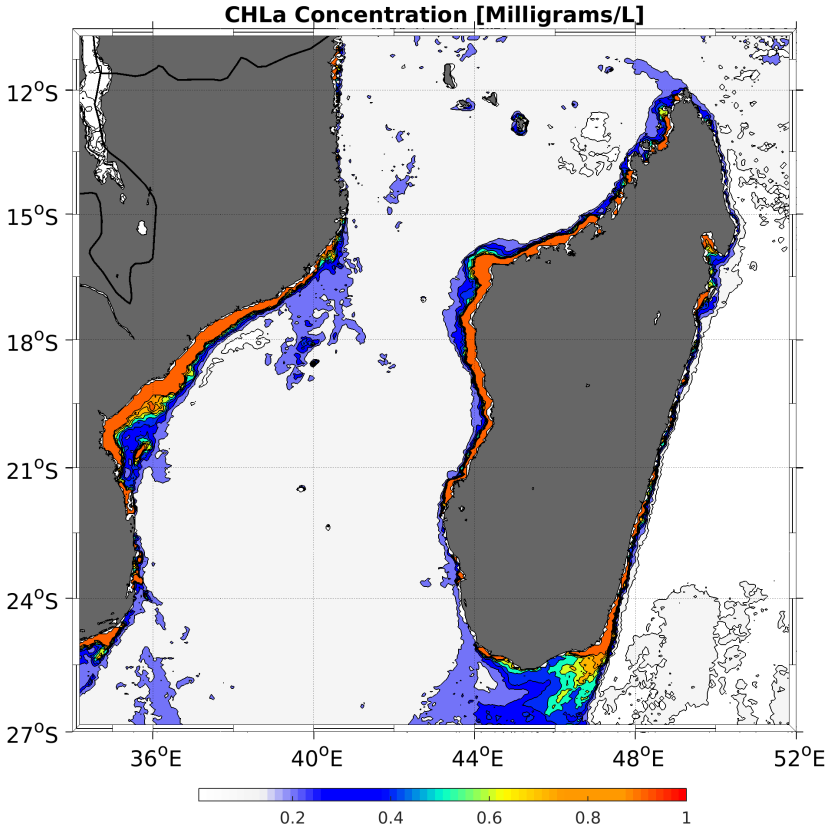


Figure 9. Bathymetry and major circulatory features in the Mozambique Channel and around Madagascar. Currents include the South Equatorial Current (SEC), Northeast and Southeast Madagascar Current (NEMC and SEMC), South Indian Countercurrent (SICC) and the Agulhas Current (AC). Shaded areas show the extent of the continental shelf to a depth of 200 m. Green ellipses denote upwelling areas.

https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-2020-486
Preprint. Discussion started: 9 February 2021

3163

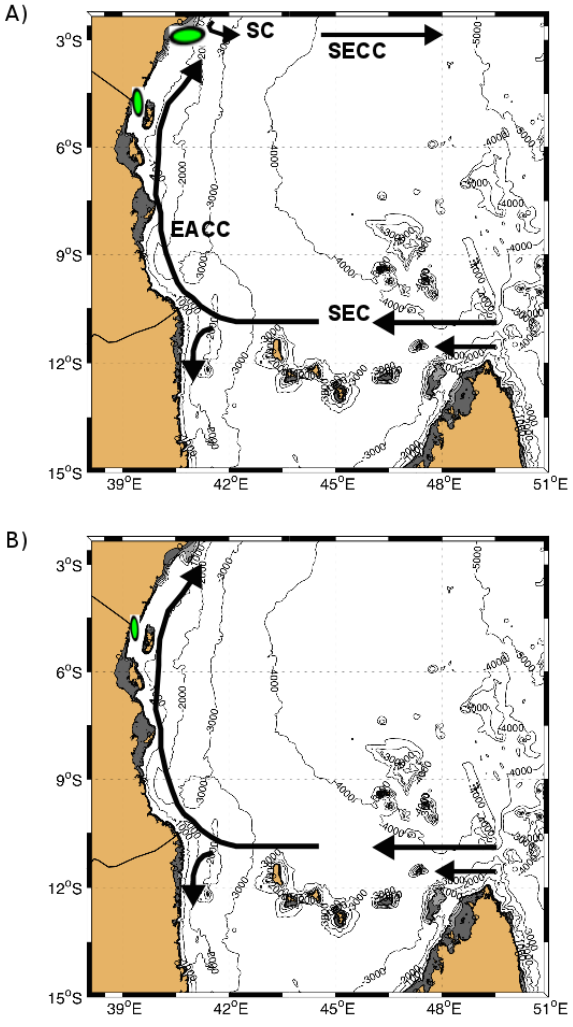


3164

3165 **Figure 10**. Monthly mean chlorophyll-a concentration for February 2003, derived from Moderate Resolution Imaging
3166 Spectroradiometer (MODIS) Aqua satellite (https://oceancolor.gsfc.nasa.gov/data/aqua/). Intermediate values beyond the
3167 continental shelf-edge highlight areas of elevated productivity off the Mozambique and Madagascar coasts that are primarily
3168 upwelling-driven.

https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-2020-486
Preprint. Discussion started: 9 February 2021

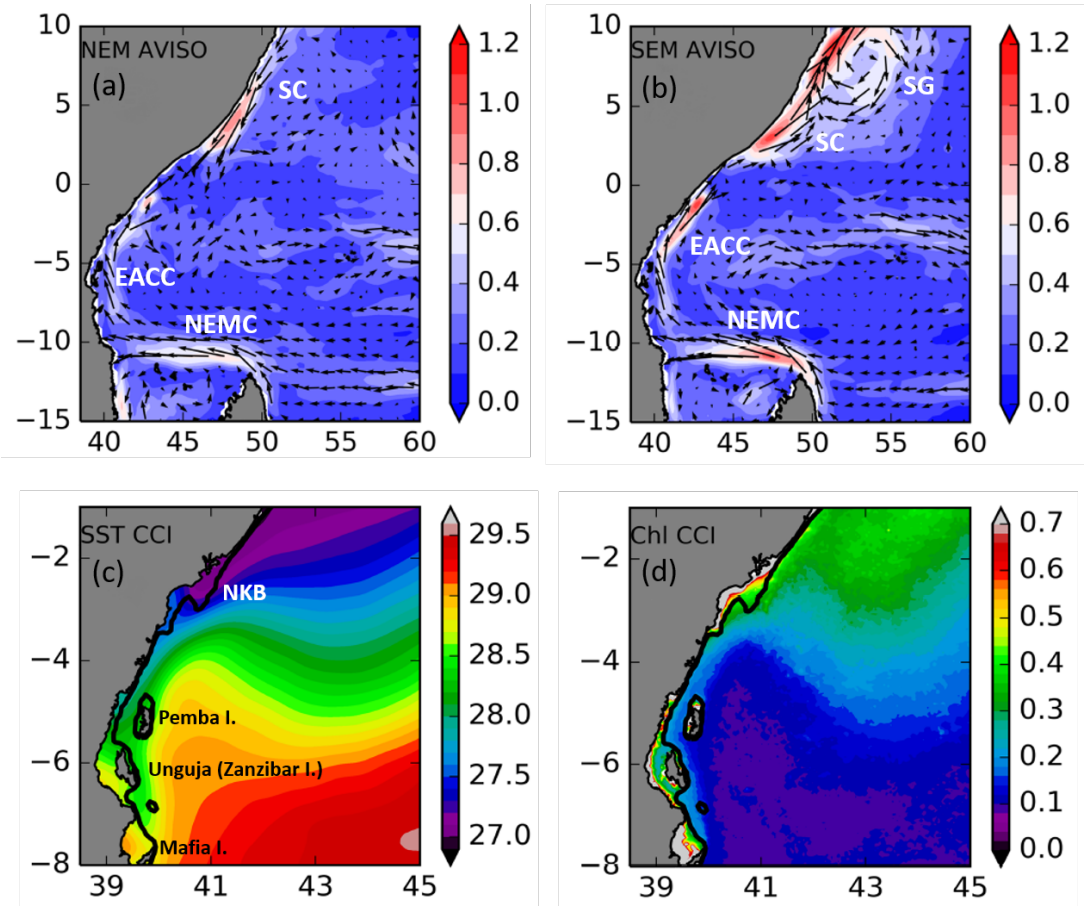
3169



3170

3171 **Figure 11.** Circulation patterns during (A) the northeast monsoon and (B) the southeast monsoon, showing the Somali
3172 Current (SC), South Equatorial Counter Current (SECC), East African Coastal Current (EACC) and the South Equatorial
3173 Current (SEC). Green ellipses denote upwelling areas.

https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-2020-486
Preprint. Discussion started: 9 February 2021



3174

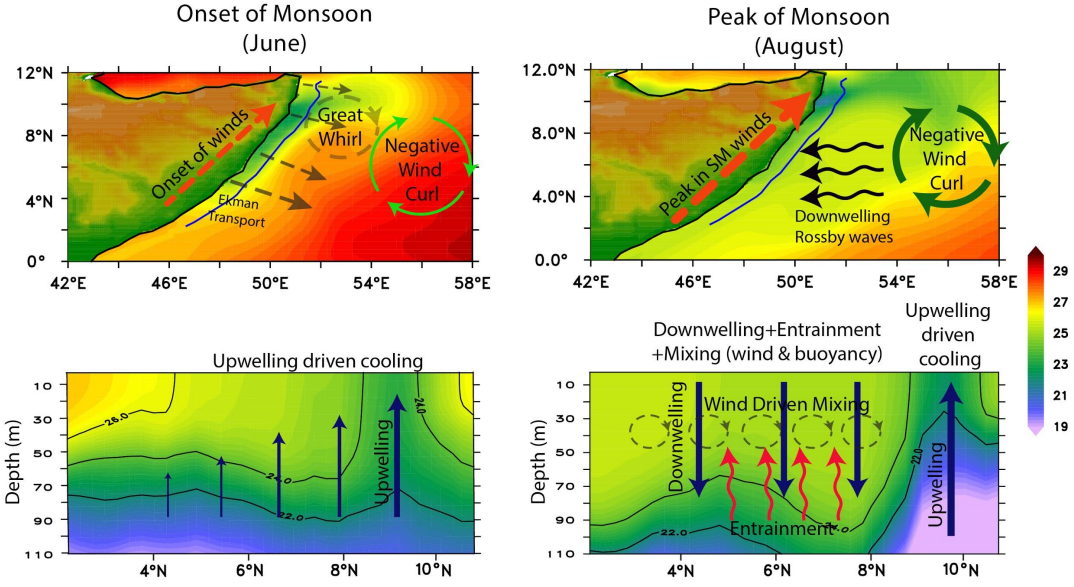
3175 **Figure 12**. Decadal average of surface currents (m s^{-1}) during (a) the NEM (DJF) and (b) the SEM (MJJAS) from altimetry
3176 (AVISO), over the period 2001-2010. Features shown are the Somali Current (SC), the East African Coastal Current
3177 (EACC), the Northeast Madagascar Current (NEMC), the Somali Gyre (SG) and the North Kenya Banks (NKB). Decadal
3178 average of (c) SST (°C) and (d) surface chlorophyll (mg m^{-3}) during the NEM (DJF) from remote sensing (CCI) over the
3179 period 2001–2010. The thick black line represents the 200-m isobath. Adapted from Jacobs et al. (2020).

3180

3181

https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-2020-486
Preprint. Discussion started: 9 February 2021

3182



3183

3184 **Figure 13.** Climatological SST (^{o}C, Panel a and b) and vertical section of temperature (^{o}C, Panel c and d) along the
3185 vertical section aligned roughly around 1000 m isobath (blue contour along the Somali coast in the top panels) for the month
3186 of June (left panels) and August (right panels). The climatology is computed from model (Modular Ocean Model, Version
3187 5.1) interannual simulations for 1993-2018 (reproduced from Chatterjee et al., 2019; Lakshmi et al., 2020). As the monsoon
3188 onset during early June, southwesterly winds blow along the coast of Somalia (red dashed arrow) leading to offshore Ekman
3189 transport (which is stronger in the south than the northern part; see Panel a black dashed arrows) driven coastal upwelling
3190 (upward blue arrows; Panel c). Though the offshore transport is strongest in the south, the maximum upwelling (upsloping
3191 of thermocline) is seen along the front of the Great Whirl north of ~8oN (Panel c). Notably, offshore wind stress curl turns
3192 negative south of the Findlater Jet axis favorable for open ocean downwelling. As the monsoon peaks, this negative wind
3193 stress curl radiates downwelling Rossby waves (Panel b) which propagate westward and upon reaching the Somali coast
3194 deepen the thermocline there against the upwelling favorable winds (downward blue arrows; Panel d). Further, stronger
3195 winds during peak monsoon enhance wind driven mixing which further deepen the thermocline in most parts of the Somalia
3196 coast. By late summer, the upwelling remains confined to the front of the Great Whirl in the northern part of the Somalia
3197 coast.

3198

https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-2020-486
Preprint. Discussion started: 9 February 2021

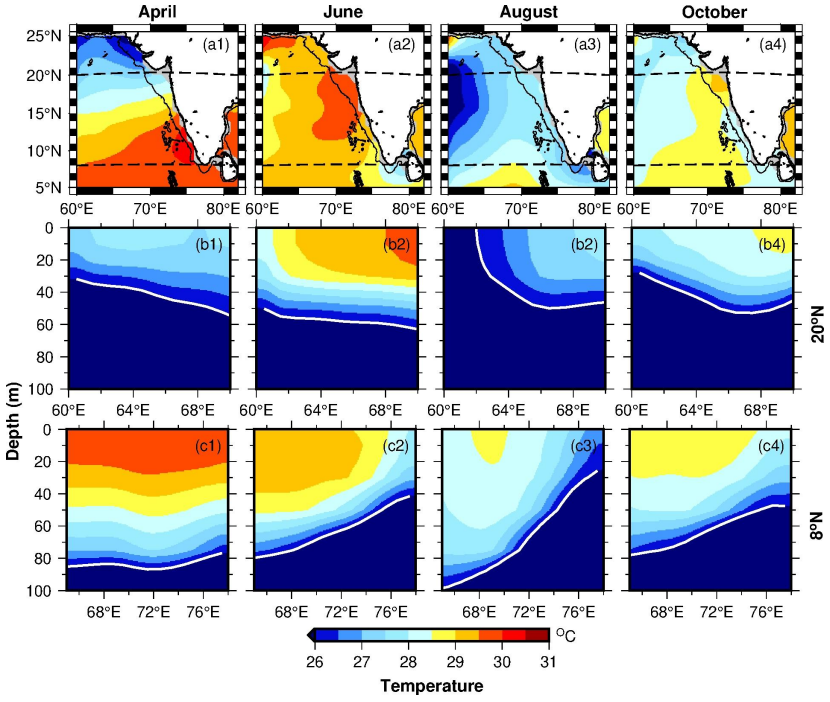


Figure 14. Monthly climatology of temperature from April to October. The data are from *North Indian Ocean Atlas* (Chatterjee et al. 2012). (a1-a4) Sea surface temperature from the eastern Arabian Sea. The black contour represents the 1000 m water-column depth, and the horizontal dashed lines are the 20°N and 8°N. (b1-b4) Vertical section of temperature at 20°N. (c1-c4) Vertical section of temperature at 8°N. The white contour is 26°C. The figure highlights how the upwelling evolves from pre-monsoon to post-monsoon season along the west coast of India. The upwelling sets earlier in the south and progresses slowly towards north. The upward tilt of the isopycnals, though weak, is evident at 20°N towards the end of the summer monsoon.

https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-2020-486
Preprint. Discussion started: 9 February 2021

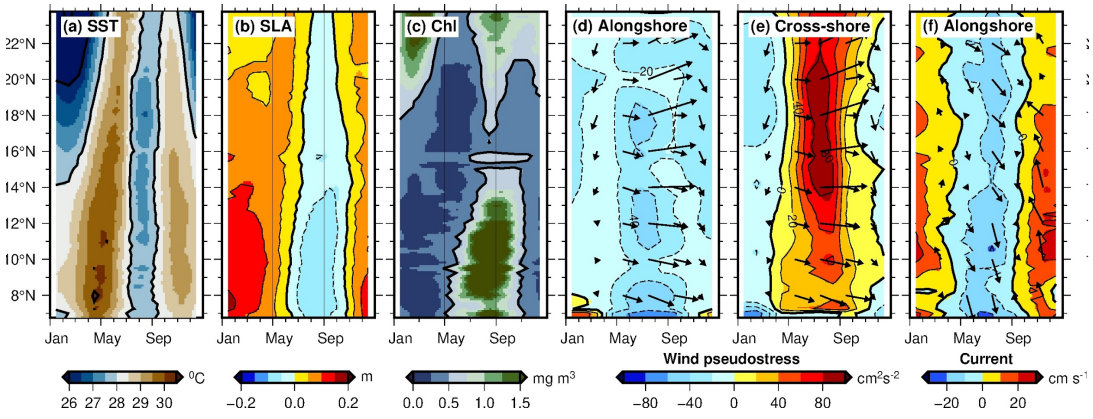


Figure 15. Climatology of (a) sea surface temperature from Terra MODIS, (b) sea-level anomaly from Aviso SSALTO/DUACS, (c) chlorophyll-*a* from SeaWIFS, (d) alongshore and (e) cross-shore wind pseudostress from QuikSCAT, and (f) alongshore current from OSCAR. The data were picked and the vectors were rotated based on the 1000 m contour (see Figure 15). Panels (a) and (c) are redrawn based on (Shankar et al., 2019).

https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-2020-486
Preprint. Discussion started: 9 February 2021

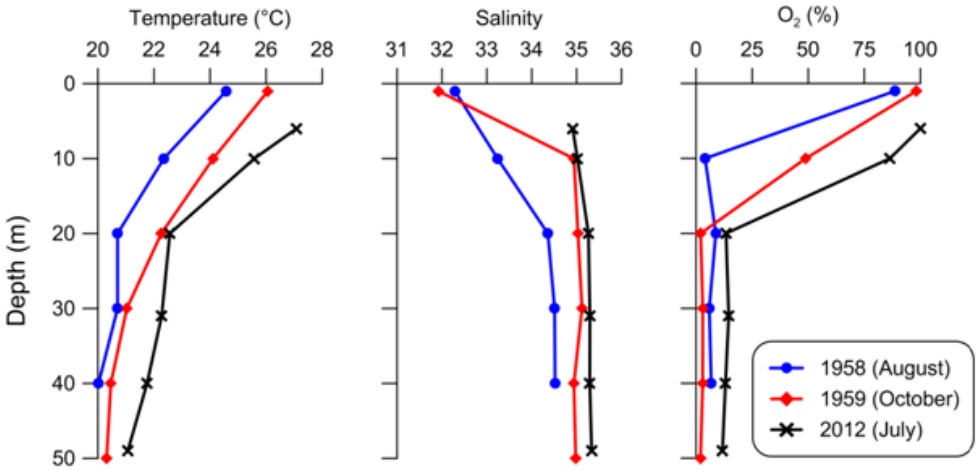


Figure 16. Comparison of historical profiles of temperature, salinity and dissolved oxygen corresponding to peak upwelling months over the inner shelf off Kochi, southwest coast of India (From Gupta et al., 2016).

https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-2020-486
Preprint. Discussion started: 9 February 2021

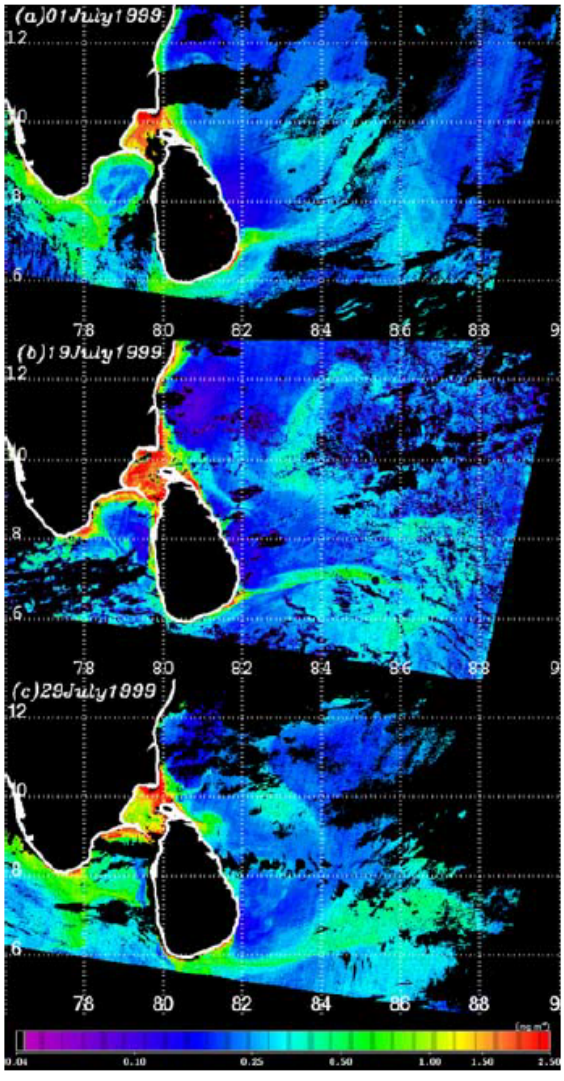


Figure 17. Chlorophyll a (mg m-3) images around Sri Lanka for (a) 1 July 1999, (b) 19 July 1999 and (c) 29 July 1999 obtained from OCM on board IRS-P4 Oceansat (From Vinayachandran et al., 2004).

https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-2020-486
Preprint. Discussion started: 9 February 2021

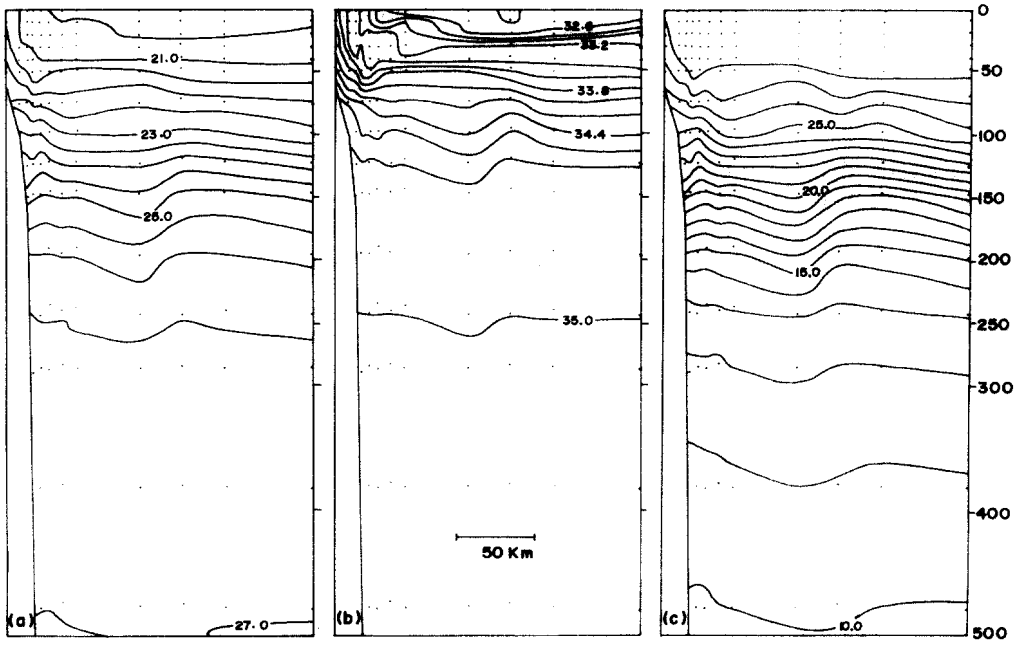


Figure 18. Hydrography along a section (normal to the coast) which lies approximately midway of the east cost of India. (a) potential density (g cm^{-3}); (b) salinity (ppt); (c) temperature (°C). The scale shown in (b) also applies to (a) and (c). (From Shetye et al., 1991**).**

https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-2020-486
Preprint. Discussion started: 9 February 2021

Biogeosciences
Discussions
Open Access
EGU

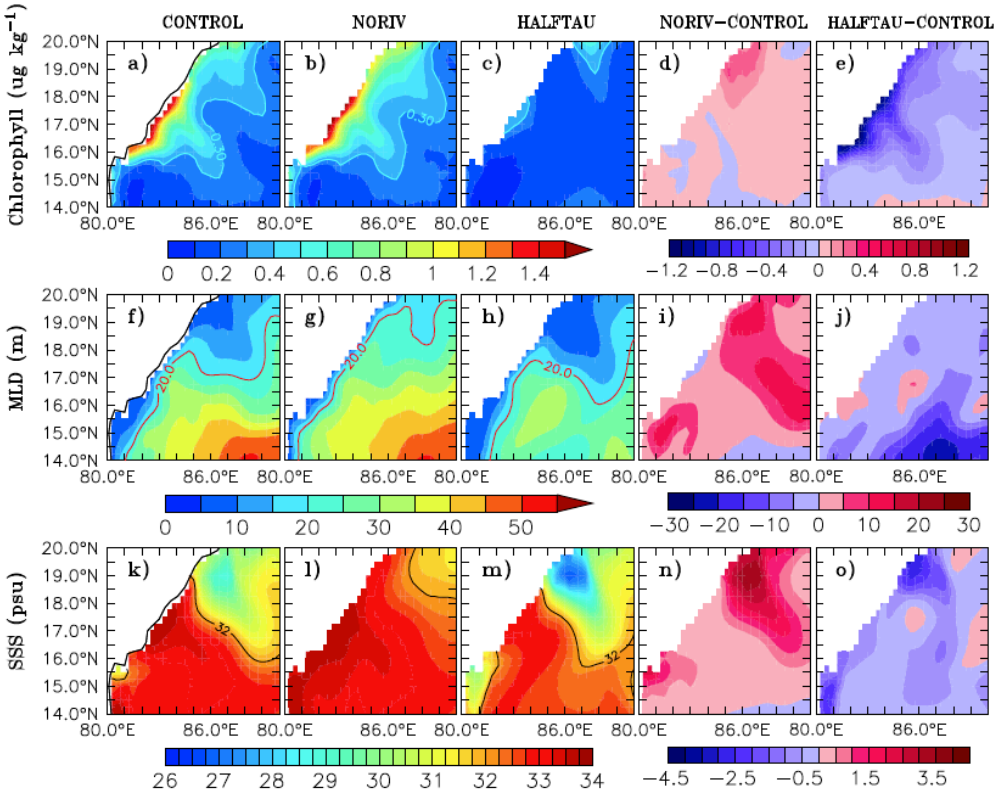


Figure 19. Forcing mechanisms of upwelling induced chlorophyll distribution in the northwestern Bay of Bengal. Comparison of model simulated surface (a–e) chlorophyll, (f–j) MLD, and (k–o) SSS from CONTROL, NORIV, and HALFTAU experiments averaged for the month of August. Contours shown are for chlorophyll, MLD, and salinity of 0.3 ug kg21, 20 m and 32 psu, respectively. Shown are model simulations from a control run which included all the forcings (CONTROL), without river runoff (NORIV) and with the magnitude of wind stress reduced by 50% (HALFTAU) (From Thushara and Vinayachandran, 2016)

https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-2020-486
Preprint. Discussion started: 9 February 2021

Biogeosciences
Discussions
Open Access
EGU

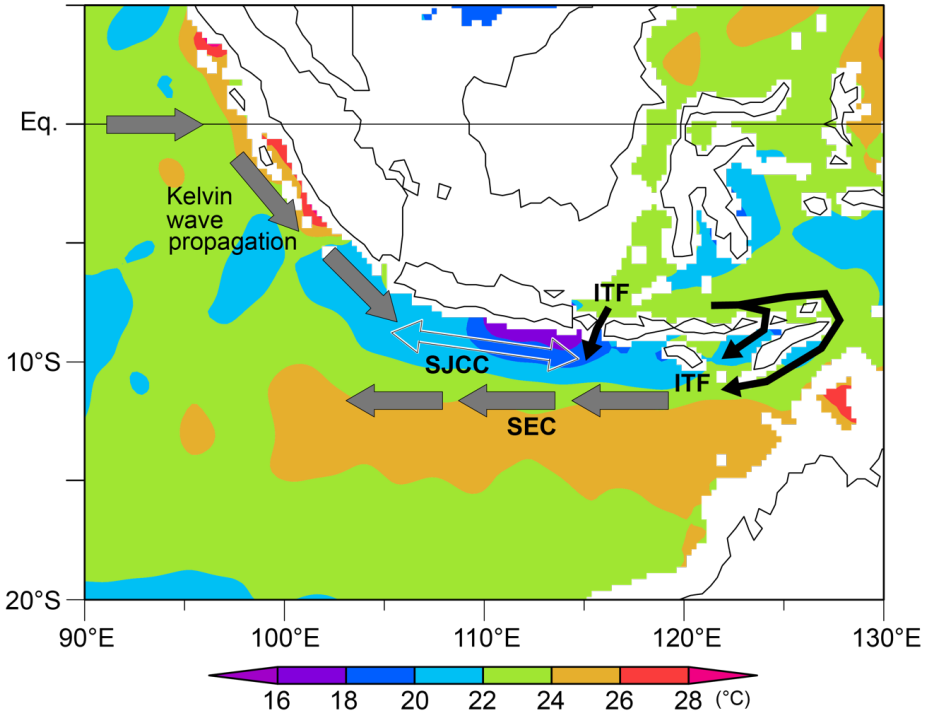


Figure 20. Map of the Sumatra-Java upwelling region and surrounding area. Background color shade shows July-August-September mean climatological temperature at 100 m depth from World Ocean Atlas 2018 (Locarnini et al., 2018). Grey, black, and line arrows schematically indicate representative surface currents near the upwelling system (SEC: South Equatorial Current; SJCC: South Java Coastal Current; ITF: Indonesian throughflow) and a route of Kelvin wave propagation from the equatorial region down to the Sumatra and Java coasts.

https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-2020-486
Preprint. Discussion started: 9 February 2021

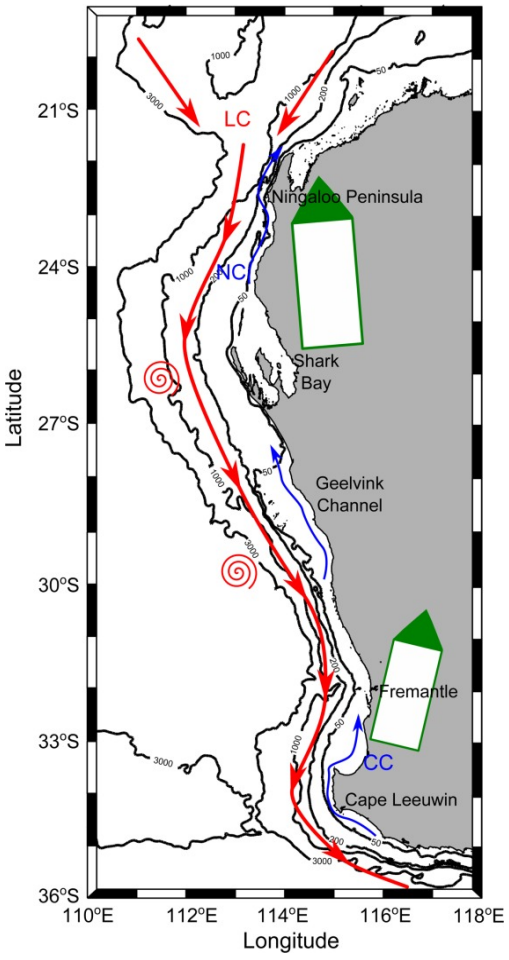
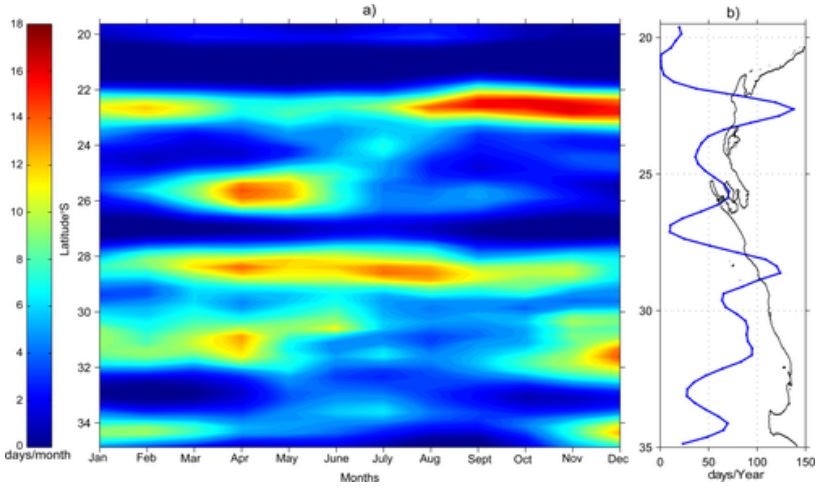


Figure 21. Map of the Western Australian coast with thin black contours showing the 50, 200, 1000 and 3000m isobaths. Green arrows represent mean surface winds, red arrows indicate the Leeuwin Current, red schematic vortices indicates meso-scale eddies and blue arrows indicate the Capes and Ningaloo Currents (from Rossi et al., 2013b)

https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-2020-486
Preprint. Discussion started: 9 February 2021

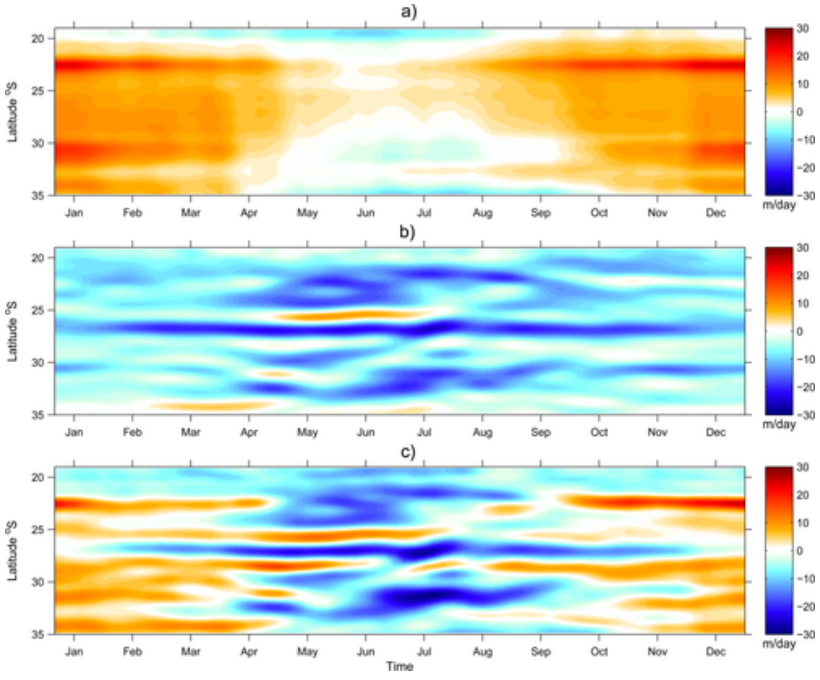


3274

3275 **Figure 22.** Climatological analysis of sporadic upwelling events. a) Hovmöller (latitude versus time) diagram of the mean
3276 number of "upwelling days" (CUI > 15 m/day during 3 days or more) per month and b) mean number of "upwelling days"
3277 per year, recorded from 1995-2010 (from Rossi et al. 2013b).

3278

https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-2020-486
Preprint. Discussion started: 9 February 2021

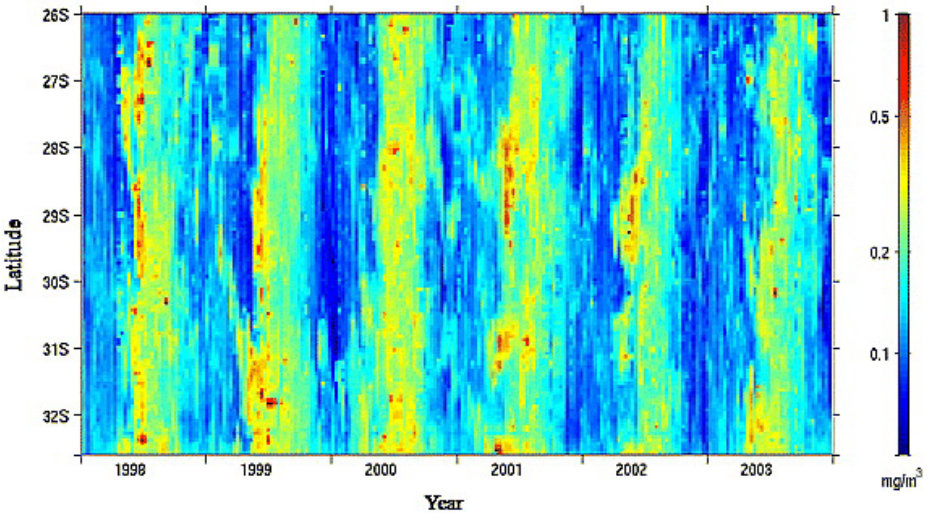


3279

3280 **Figure 23.** Hovmöller diagrams (latitude versus time) of a) the Ekman upwelling index (m/day, equivalent to vertical
3281 velocities), b) the geostrophic upwelling index (m/day, equivalent to vertical velocities), and c) composite upwelling index
3282 (in m/day of vertical velocities, a combination of the two previous components). Red colours represent a balance of forces
3283 favouring upwelling events (from Rossi et al., 2013b).

3284

https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-2020-486
Preprint. Discussion started: 9 February 2021



3285

3286 **Figure 24.** Annual distribution of chlorophyll estimated from SeaWiFS ocean colour data along the shelf break off the west
3287 coast of Australia from 26°- 32°S , 1998-2003 (from Koslow et al., 2008).

3288

3289

https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-2020-486
Preprint. Discussion started: 9 February 2021

Biogeosciences
Discussions
Open Access
EGU

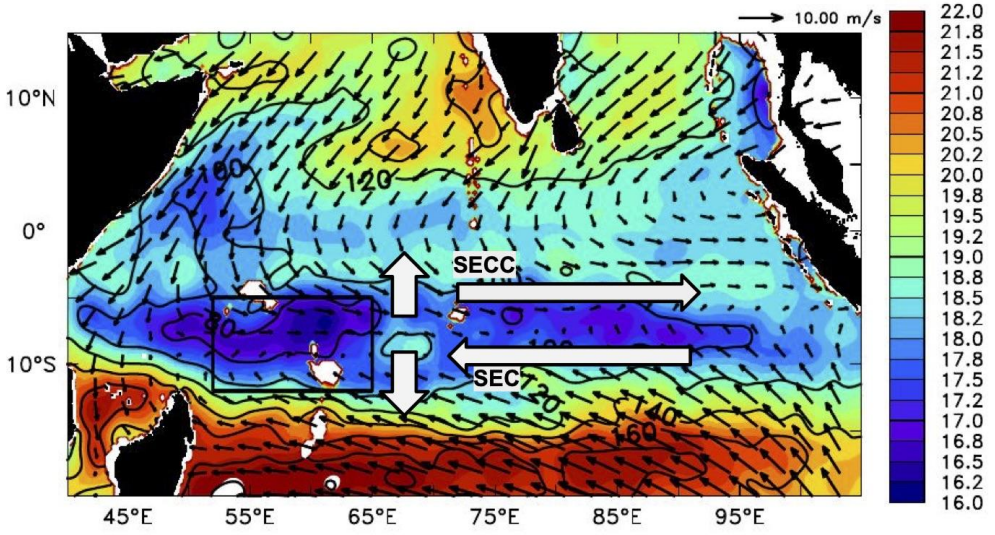


Figure 25. Climatological (Locarnini, 2018) temperature (shading with scale shown to the right) averaged over 0-300m for the months of January and February (shaded) overlayed with wind vectors (m/s) from QuikSCAT Climatology (2000-2008) and thermocline (depth of 20 degree C isotherm, m) depth as the black contour lines. Reference vector for winds is given at the top right corner. The black box marked represents the Seychelles-Chagos Thermocline Ridge (SCTR) . The surface flow indicated by upward and downward white arrows promotes upwelling leading to the formation of the SCTR. The white arrows aligned left is the South equatorial current (SEC) and right is the South equatorial counter currents (SECC). Redrawn after Vialard et al. (2009)

https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-2020-486
Preprint. Discussion started: 9 February 2021

Biogeosciences
Discussions
Open Access
EGU

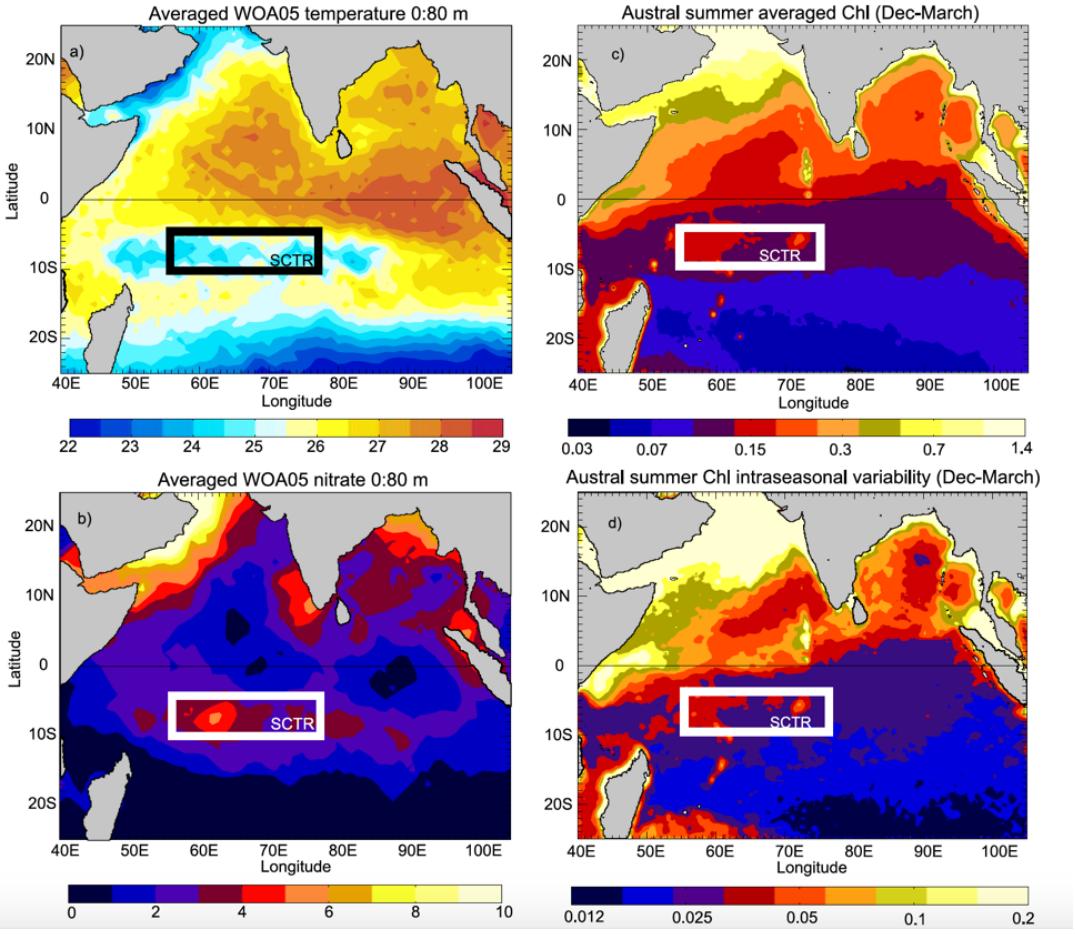


Figure 26. Annual World Ocean Atlas (2005) (a) temperature and (b) nitrate concentration (in mmol N m^{-3}) averaged between the surface and 80 m in the Indian Ocean. (c) SeaWiFS seasonal mean during austral summer (December–March) (mg m^{-3}). (d) Intraseasonal variability of SeaWiFS Chl during austral summer estimated by the averaged RMS of (Chl-Chl*) between December and March of years 1998–2007. (from Resplandy et al. (2009).

https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-2020-486
Preprint. Discussion started: 9 February 2021

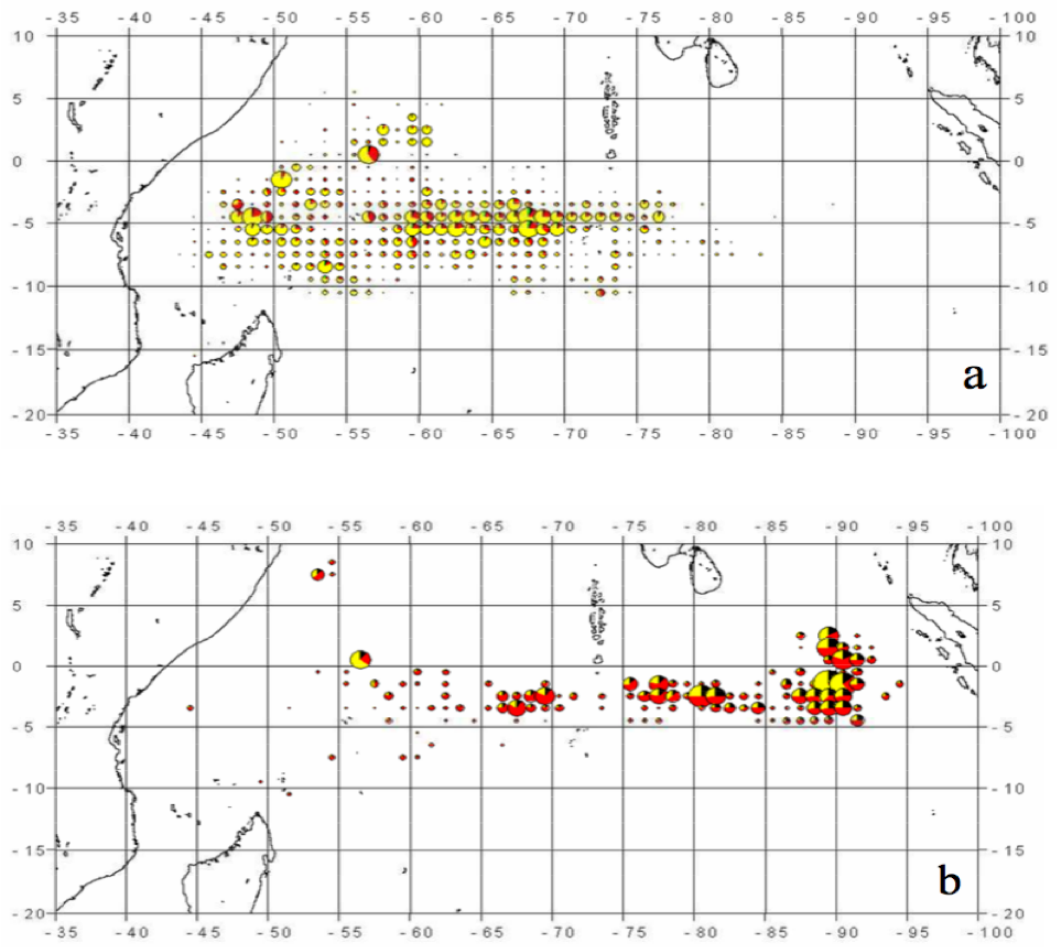


Figure 27. Tuna catch in the Indian Ocean during the 1997/1998 IOD event (bottom panel) compared to catch in normal years (top panel). From Robinson et al. (2010), Copyright Inter-Research 2010.

https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-2020-486
Preprint. Discussion started: 9 February 2021

Biogeosciences
Discussions
Open Access
EGU

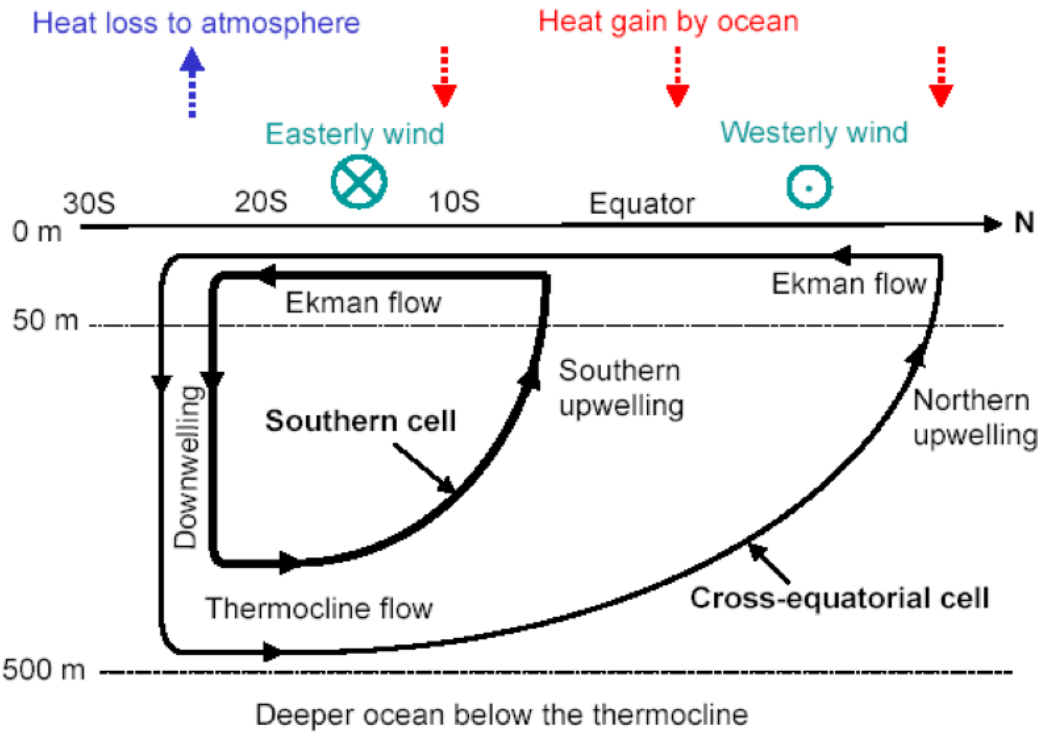


Figure 28. Conceptual illustration of the time-mean meridional overturning circulation of the upper Indian Ocean that consists of a southern and a cross-equatorial cell. The time-mean zonal wind and surface heat flux are also shown schematically. This flow is believed to partially supply the cross-equatorial thermocline flow. From Lee (2004)